DRAFT ONLY – NOT COUNCIL POLICY

CONSULTATIVE DRAFT

Waikato Regional Coastal Plan|Mahere Takutai Moana ā-Rohe o Waikato

8 June 2022

PART 1 – INTRODUCTION AND GENERAL PROVISIONS | WĀHANGA 1 – HE TĪMATANGA KŌRERO ME NGĀ WHAKARITENGA MATUA

Foreword| He kupu whakataki

Getting it right for our coasts - *Kia tika ai mō te takutai*

This plan outlines objectives, policies and rules for the sustainable management of the region's coastal marine area, giving effect to the New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement 2010 and the Waikato Regional Policy Statement 2016.

Iwi, stakeholder and community input has helped us develop the draft plan as a tool for guiding decision making about the use, development and protection of natural and physical resources in the coastal marine area of the Waikato region.

The Waikato Regional Coastal Plan has the really important job of setting out how we sustainably manage our region's coastal environment.

The current coastal plan was first notified in 1995 and became operative in July 2004. Things are a lot different now to how they were 27 years ago.

- National direction has changed which the plan is required to either give effect to, or take into account
- There are lots more people living, playing or working on the region's coasts
- We're seeing environmental changes too
- We have a much better understanding of how our climate is changing and the effects that this could have on our land and coasts.

We've also had feedback that the plan could be made easier to understand and use in decision-making, and that we need to take a fresh look at whether we're subjecting activities to the right level of scrutiny.

In developing this draft plan we have collected feedback from tangata whenua, stakeholders and the community on the key issues and how we can address these for our coasts under the Resource Management Act 1991. We have considered how we give effect to the New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement 2010 as it applies to our region and what iwi aspirations are for protection and development within the coastal marine area (takutai moana).

In April 2021, we put out a series of topic-based *Policy Directions Papers*, which saw great feedback provided on how we address key issues and whether the recommended approach was supported or a better alternative exists. We've listened and developed the draft plan based on all feedback gathered since the Waikato Regional Coastal Plan Review commenced in 2015.

The draft Waikato Regional Coastal Plan is now presented for your feedback.

Table of Contents

1 Introduction

Purpose

The purpose of the Waikato Regional Coastal Plan is to promote the sustainable management of the natural and physical resources of the Waikato coastal marine area.

It provides a framework of objectives, policies and rules to manage activities in the coastal marine area.

The Regional Coastal Plan for the Waikato region is prepared under the requirements of the RMA. It will assist the Waikato Regional Council in achieving the purpose of the RMA, which is the sustainable management of natural and physical resources.

The Waikato Regional Coastal Plan has been prepared recognising and providing for the relationship of mana whenua with their culture and traditions with ancestral lands, water, sites, wāhi tapu, and other taonga. In administering the plan, Waikato Regional Council is required to have particular regard to kaitiakitanga and take into account the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi (Te Tiriti o Waitangi).

The Regional Coastal Plan sets out a framework for the integrated and sustainable management of natural and physical resources. It includes objectives, policies and rules to manage use and development activities within the coastal marine area under the jurisdiction of the regional council. The policies and rules provide the basis for monitoring the efficiency and effectiveness of the plan in achieving sustainable management of coastal resources in the region.

Description of the region

The Waikato region stretches from the Bombay Hills and Port Waikato in the north, south to Mokau on the west coast, and across to the Coromandel Peninsula and the Kaimai Range in the east. In the south, the region extends to the slopes of Mount Ruapehu.

The Waikato region has 1,200km of diverse coastline, ranging from the white sands of the eastern Coromandel to the rugged west coast (from Port Waikato to Mokau) with its distinctive black sands and windswept shoreline.

The CMA is from mean high water springs (MHWS) and extends approximately 22km offshore, covering more than one million hectares (10,239km^2) and approximately 30 per cent of the region.

Located within the coastal marine area are:

- the Te Whanganui-A-Hei (Cathedral Cove) Marine Reserve
- the Hauraki Gulf Marine Park
- 431,278ha of marine mammal sanctuaries.

The Firth of Thames Ramsar site is an internationally recognised for its significant conservation values.

Other forms of marine protection include areas designated as local fishing grounds under the Māori Fisheries Act 1989 and submarine cable and pipeline zones.

Offshore islands include Cuvier Island, Mercury Islands, Alderman Islands and Slipper Island on the east coast, and Gannet Island on the west coast.

The CMA covers the area from Mean High Water Springs (MHWS) out to the 12 nautical mile limit of the territorial sea (refer Figure 1). The management of the CMA focuses essentially on the foreshore, seabed, coastal water and the air space above the water, and aims to manage its use, development, and protection in a sustainable manner.

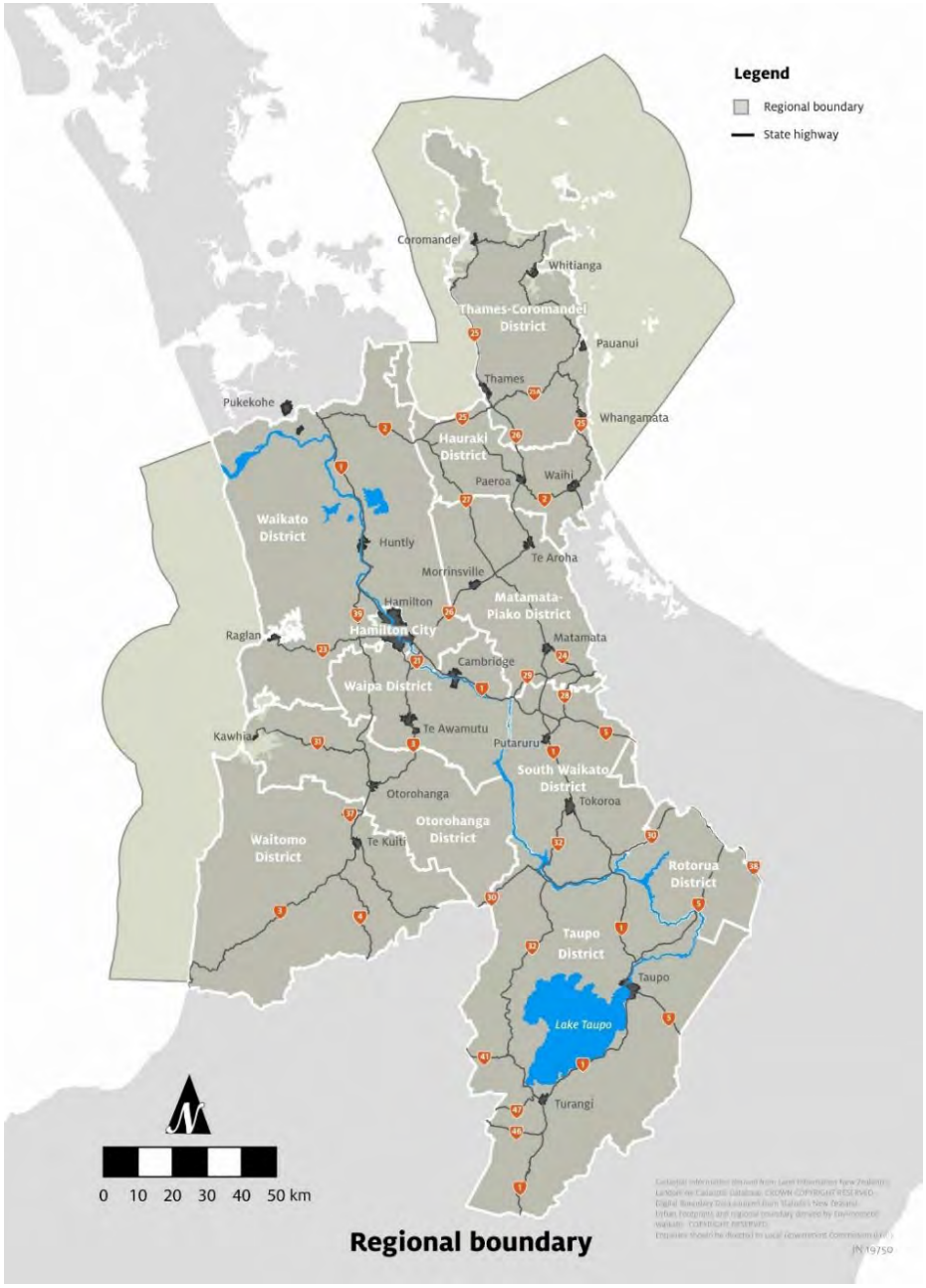

Figure 1 – Map of the Waikato region showing the coastal marine area of the West Coast, Firth of Thames/Hauraki Gulf and Coromandel Peninsula.

HOW THE PLAN WORKS

Statutory context

Resource Management Act 1991

The Resource Management Act 1991 (RMA) defines natural and physical resources to include 'land, water, air, soil, minerals and energy, all forms of plants and animals (whether native to New Zealand or introduced) and all structures'.

The purpose, function and contents of the Waikato Regional Coastal Plan are directed towards achieving the purpose of the RMA (defined by Part 2), which is 'to promote the sustainable management of natural and physical resources' (under Section 5). Waikato Regional Council must have a coastal plan at all times under Section 64 of the RMA.

Sections 6, 7 and 8 of the RMA place particular duties on Council when exercising its functions and powers, as follows:

- Section 6 (Matters of National Importance) – Council must recognise and provide for the matters of national importance listed in this section
- Section 7 (Other Matters) – Council must have regard to the matters listed in this section
- Section 8 (Treaty of Waitangi) – Council must take into account the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi.

These matters have been addressed in the objectives, policies, rules and standards in the plan alongside the various schedules. In addition, the Regional Coastal Plan has been prepared to give effect to, have regard to (or not be inconsistent with) various other planning related documents to achieve the integrated management of natural and physical resources (as directed by the RMA and explained below).

In developing the draft Waikato Regional Coastal Plan, Council is required to give effect to the New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement 2010 (NZCPS) in particular. The NZCPS is the framework policy for the plan.

Relationship with other plans and documents

Planning document	Document purpose	Relationship with Regional Coastal Plan
New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement 2010	The New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement states policies in order to achieve the purpose of the RMA in relation to the coastal environment of New Zealand.	The coastal plan must give effect to the New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement.
National Policy Statements (as set out in the National policy statements and New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement chapter)	A national policy statement must state objectives and policies for matters of national significance that are relevant to achieving the purpose of this RMA.	The coastal plan must give effect to National Policy Statements.
National Environmental Standards (as set out in the National environmental standards chapter)	Regulations that prescribe technical standards, methods, or requirements in relation to the use, development and protection of natural and physical resources.	The coastal plan must not duplicate or conflict with a provision in a national environmental standard.
National Planning Standards 2019	The purpose of the National Planning Standards is to assist in achieving the purpose of the RMA, and to set out requirements or other provisions relating to any aspect of the structure, format, or content of regional policy statements and plans.	A regional plan must give effect to a national planning standard.
Waikato Regional Policy Statement: Te Tauākī Kaupapahere Te-Rohe O Waikato 2016	Provides an overview of resource management issues facing the region and outlines objectives, policies and methods to achieve integrated management of the natural and physical resources of the Waikato Region.	The coastal plan must give effect to the Waikato Regional Policy Statement.
Waikato Regional Plan 2007	The purpose of the preparation, implementation, and administration of regional plans is to assist a regional council to carry out any of its functions in order to achieve the sustainable management purpose of the RMA.	The coastal plan must not be inconsistent with any other regional plan for the Waikato region.
Iwi management plans	These plans are developed and approved by iwi and hapū to address resource management matters of significance to tangata whenua.	When preparing or changing a regional plan, Council must take into account any relevant planning document recognised by an iwi authority, and lodged with the council, to the extent that its content has a bearing on the resource management issues of the region.
Statutory Acknowledgements	Statements of statutory acknowledgements are set out in	Council obligations are to;

	Treaty of Waitangi settlement legislation. A Statutory Acknowledgement is a formal recognition by the Crown of the mana of tangata whenua over a specified area. It recognises the particular cultural, spiritual, historical and traditional association of an iwi with the site, which is identified as a Statutory Area. Statutory acknowledgements are listed in Appendix 1 to the RPS.	• Identify Statutory Acknowledgement Areas in the coastal marine area • Have regard to the Statutory Acknowledgements in decision making.
Heritage New Zealand List – Rārangi Kōrero	This list is required by the Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014. It identifies New Zealand's significant and valued historical and cultural heritage places	The coastal plan must have regard to any relevant entry on the Heritage New Zealand List – Rārangi Kōrero
The Waikato Plan 2017	The Waikato Plan identifies issues and opportunities for the region and sets its course for the next 30 years. The Waikato Plan was developed between local government, iwi/Māori, central government, the private sector, and the community.	The coastal plan must have regard to any other strategy, policy or plan that may be relevant, including the Waikato Plan.
Te Ture Whaimana o Te Awa o Waikato (Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River)	As part of the Waikato River Settlement between the Crown and Waikato-Tainui, Te Ture Whaimana o Te Awa o Waikato – the Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River was developed. This Vision and Strategy was developed by the Guardians Establishment Committee, iwi and communities of the Waikato River catchment and is periodically reviewed by the Waikato River Authority. The strategy seeks to restore and protect the health and wellbeing of the Waikato River.	The coastal plan must give effect to the Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River.
Sea Change - *Tai Timu Tai Pari* (Hauraki Gulf Marine Spatial Plan)	*Tai Timu Tai Pari* was released in December 2016. It contains a set of proposals for improving the health and mauri of the Hauraki Gulf Marine Park across the Auckland and Waikato regions.	The coastal plan must have regard to any other strategy, policy or plan that may be relevant, including *Tai Timu Tai Pari*.

General approach

The National Planning Standards November 2019 contain standards that set out the required structure, format, spatial layers and mapping requirements for a Regional Plan, as well as standard definitions. This Regional Coastal Plan has been prepared to give effect to the National Planning Standards.

The Regional Coastal Plan should be read in full. It contains three interrelated parts as outlined below. The objectives and policies apply to any relevant activity undertaken in the CMA under this Plan.

Part 1 – Introduction and General Provisions	This part of the plan contains the chapters that explain the plan's context, how it works and provides definitions, abbreviations and a glossary to assist in its interpretation. The chapters also provide context and process-related information in relation to tangata whenua and resource management matters.
Part 2 – Management of Resources	This part of the Plan is in several sections as required by the National Planning Standards: • Integrated management • Domains • Topics • Area-specific matters. Because the majority of the plan sits under just one Domain (Coastal Marine Area), all topic-based chapters – which set out the objectives, polices and rules for both values and activities, sit in this section of the plan. The Area-specific matters are incorporated into the relevant plan chapters, schedules and maps, as discrete mooring and marina areas, marine infrastructure development areas and aquaculture management areas which apply to portion of the CMA only. Development Areas – a development area identifies and manages areas where plans, such as master plans or development plans, apply to determine future use and/or development.
Part 3 – Appendices and Maps	Part 3 includes a series of schedules which contain technical information and data, such as schedules of specific values. These are called overlays and are managed under the various value and activity-based chapters in Part 2. For example, Schedule 3 - Seascapes (Outstanding Natural Features and Landscapes) lists those areas of the CMA that have been identified as being outstanding natural features and landscapes and includes a description of each area's characteristics and values. The objectives, policies, rules and standards that apply to the areas contained in Schedule 6 are contained in the Natural Features and Landscapes chapter in Part 2. Electronic planning maps spatially define zones, areas, overlays and features referred to within the topic chapters in Part 2. Although most rules apply spatially, there are some that do not.

Format of topic chapters

Each of the topic chapters in Part 2 follows the same format:

- Overview
- Objectives
- Policies
- Rules (if any)
- Standards (if any)

Each chapter has a unique acronym which identifies the topic being covered. For example, the Structures and occupation of space chapter is identified as STR.

The overview section provides a summary of the topic covered by the chapter. It also identifies any other key chapters that may have relevance to the topic.

The objectives set out the outcome to be achieved for the topic. There may be a number of objectives that apply. Each objective has a specific number - for example STR-O1.

The policies set out the direction to be taken to achieve the objective. There may be a number of policies that apply. Each policy has a specific number - for example STR-P1.

The rules have the effect of regulations and set out the activity status for different activities that may be proposed. There may be a number of rules that apply. Each rule has a specific number - for example STR-R1.

Rules may refer to standards that need to be complied with. Again, there may be a number of standards that apply.

Integrated management

The Integrated Management chapter of the plan sets out the integrated objectives and integrated policies for use and development in the CMA. This includes iwi resource management, climate changes considerations and integrated management of coastal resources within the Waikato region.

a. Treaty of Waitangi

Waikato Regional Council recognises that tangata whenua of the region have an important relationship with coastal resources. In undertaking its functions under the RMA, Council must also take into account the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi (Te Tiriti o Waitangi). Matters of special value to tangata whenua need to be protected through provisions in this Plan. The Council recognises the need for on-going consultation and engagement with tangata whenua over management of the coast and will continue to seek their involvement in both this plan and its implementation.

b. Precautionary approach

Waikato Regional Council will take a precautionary approach when making decisions about the use, development and protection of coastal resources where effects are uncertain or where potential risks to the environment are considered to be unacceptable. The precautionary approach will ensure that any decision made will err on the side of protecting the environment and that any adverse effects will be avoided, remedied, or mitigated. This approach recognises

there is limited information available for much of the region's CMA, and the effects activities may have on it in the present or future need to be carefully considered.

Resource consents and activities

The activities managed by the Regional Coastal Plan reflect Waikato Regional Council's functions under section 30 of the RMA.
Part 3 of the RMA sets out a number of restrictions to control the adverse effects of certain activities on the environment. The following key statutory restrictions apply in relation to the coastal marine area:

1. restrictions on use of the CMA (section 12) including:
    a. reclamation or drainage of the foreshore or seabed;
    b. erection, reconstruction (repair), placement, alteration, extension, removal or demolition of any structure;
    c. destruction, damage or disturbance of the foreshore or seabed;
    d. depositing any material in a manner that is likely to have an adverse effect on the foreshore or seabed;
    e. introduction of exotic or introduced plants;
    f. occupation of the common marine and coastal area; and
    g. removal of any sand, shingle, shell or other natural material from the common marine and coastal area;

2. restrictions relating to the taking, use, damming or diversion of water (section 14);

3. restrictions relating to the discharge of harmful substances, contaminants, water, waste or other matter into water, onto or into land, or into air (sections 15, 15A and 15B); and

4. duty to avoid unreasonable noise (section 16).

Activities covered by sections 12, 14, 15, 15A and 15B may not be undertaken within the CMA unless expressly allowed by a national environmental standard, a rule in a regional plan, or a resource consent. The national environmental standard, plan or resource consent may prescribe the noise standards for those activities (section 16).

Classes of activities

A 'traffic light' colour coding approach is used in the plan rules to indicate the status of an activity.

- green – for permitted activities (no consent required)
- yellow, orange and purple – indicating where resource consent is required
- red - where the activity is prohibited in the CMA (consent can not be applied for).

Whether resource consent is required and what Council is required to consider are set out for each activity in the rules of the plan. The six types of activity class provided for by the RMA are detailed in the table below.

Activity status	Requires resource consent?	Explanation
Permitted	No	Permitted activities do not require resource consent, provided standards and all other relevant rules are met.
Controlled	Yes, and consent must be granted	Council must grant consent for a controlled activity, except in specific circumstances under sections 104 and 106 of the RMA, and can only consider matters, or impose conditions, over which the Coastal Plan or a national environmental standard has specifically reserved control. The activity may need to meet specified standards.
Restricted discretionary	Yes, and consent may be granted or declined	Council may or may not grant consent or impose conditions for a restricted discretionary activity but only on the matters over which the Coastal Plan has restricted its discretion. These matters of discretion will be listed in the relevant rule or standard. The activity may need to meet specified standards.
Discretionary	Yes, and consent may be granted or declined	Council may or may not grant consent or impose conditions for a discretionary activity and may consider any relevant matter.
Non-complying	Yes, and consent may be granted or declined	Council may or may not grant consent or impose conditions for a non-complying activity and may consider any relevant matter. Resource consent can only be granted if: (a) the effects of a proposal are no more than minor, or (b) the proposal is not contrary to the objectives and policies of the Coastal Plan.
Prohibited	No application possible	No resource consent can be applied for or granted for a prohibited activity.

Guide for resource consent applicants

The steps below set out how to find out whether or not an activity is regulated by the plan, and if so, whether a resource consent is needed from the Waikato Regional Council.

The Waikato Regional Council encourages early engagement with iwi prior to lodging a consent application. Early engagement can ensure that applications appropriately address matters of concern to tangata whenua in accordance with the RMA and contribute to the effective and efficient processing of consents, reduce delays and encourage good will between parties.

Step One: Determine whether the activity involves:

- aquaculture of any form (refer AQA rules in the Aquaculture chapter)
- discharges to air (refer AIR rules in the Discharges to Air chapter)

- discharges to the coastal marine area (refer WT rules in the Water Take, Use, Divert and Discharges chapter)
- coastal structures and occupation of space (refer STR rules in the Structures and Occupation of Space chapter), except for moorings (refer MO rules in the Moorings chapter)
- disturbance, deposition and extraction (refer DD rules in the Disturbances and Deposition chapter)
- reclamation or drainage (refer DD rules in the Disturbances and Deposition chapter)
- taking or use of water, heat or energy (refer WT rules in the Water Take, Use, Divert and Discharges chapter)

Step Two: If so, further determine where the activity occurs. The activity will be located within one or more of the zones, areas or overlays shown on the Maps and Schedules in Part 3 of the plan.

Step Three: Having identified the relevant rule(s) based upon activity and location, refer to the classification of the activity under that rule.
Note: if the 'activity' is made up of several parts, several rules and classifications may apply. Refer activity status table above.

Step Four: If any part or parts of the activity require a resource consent:

- check the policies and rules to find out which effects are of concern and any limitations or standards that may apply
- prepare a document that describes the assessment of effects on the environment
- make your resource consent application(s) to the Waikato Regional Council, and include the assessment of effects on the environment (AEE) and any other information required.

You are encouraged to consult with any persons likely to be affected by your activity, including tangata whenua if their interests are affected, prior to lodging your resource consent application.

Step Five: If in doubt, particularly regarding the information requirements of Step Four above, or the classification of your activity, contact the Waikato Regional Council.

Information to be submitted with resource consents

Schedule 4 of the RMA sets out information that is required in all resource consent applications. This includes an Assessment of Environmental Effects (AEE).

An AEE is a written statement that must be prepared in accordance with Schedule 4 of the RMA. For controlled activities, the AEE should only address those matters over which the Regional Coastal Plan has specifically reserved its control. In respect of any application for a restricted discretionary activity, the assessment should only address those matters over which the Regional Coastal Plan has specifically restricted its discretion. These matters of control and discretion are detailed within the Regional Coastal Plan.

For all other types of activities, the AEE should address all relevant matters relating to the actual or potential effects of the proposed activity on the environment, as well as the other mandatory requirements set out in Schedule 4. Additionally, any application involving a resource consent for a Discretionary or Non-complying activity must also include an assessment against relevant objectives in the Integrated Objectives chapter of the plan.

Where relevant and/or applicable, applicants should demonstrate they have considered any tangata whenua interests and impacts. See the Tangata Whenua chapter for further information.

Some rules in the Regional Coastal Plan also include a requirement for specific information to be submitted with any resource consent application required under that rule.

Legal effect of rules

This draft Regional Coastal Plan is non-statutory and does not have legal effect at this stage.

Cross boundary matters

Cross boundary issues have been addressed through this Plan, and will continue to be addressed when they arise by maintaining an ongoing dialogue with the relevant adjoining regional council and/or territorial authority to ensure effective and integrated management of resource management issues at a district and regional level.

Any cross-boundary issues will be addressed through a process of proactive collaboration and information sharing with neighbouring local authorities. Those local authorities are: Waikato Regional Council, Taranaki Regional Council, Bay of Plenty Regional Council, Auckland Council, Hauraki District Council, Waitomo District Council, Waikato District Council, Ōtorohanga District Council, Thames-Coromandel District Council and the Department of Internal Affairs.

Where there are any activities which cross the line of MHWS, the regional and district councils shall hold a joint consent hearing or undertake a transfer of functions in accordance with section 33 of the RMA, to enable one agency to be responsible for processing the related consents.

The procedure for resource consents that may give rise to cross boundary matters is as follows:

1. Establish whether any resource consents are required from other consent authorities. If so, the RMA sets out the procedures for joint hearings
2. Encourage applicants for resource consent for activities which might have effects on an adjoining local authority to consult with the consent authority
3. Include the consent authority as an affected party, where applicable, and
4. Notify the consent authority of proposals for which an application has been received where it is considered that a cross-boundary effect is likely.

Where a resource consent is identified as being a cross boundary matter, Waikato Regional Council will seek to adopt the following process (subject to the particular circumstances, the approach adopted by the other consent authorities concerned, and any relevant matters relating to delegations):

1. Where the adjacent authority does not require a resource consent application for the proposed activity, the application will proceed as provided for in this plan
2. Where both the Council and the consent authority require a resource consent application, and that application is provided for as a non-notified application, the consent and any conditions be decided by the authorities with a single decision being issued
3. Where at least one authority requires a resource consent to be notified, all authorities will notify the application and the consent and any conditions be decided by the authorities jointly with a single decision being issued. Wherever practicable, any application which requires the consent of two or more local authorities shall be heard jointly by an equal number of elected officials from both organisations and/or agreed commissioners at a mutually agreeable time and location. Waikato Regional Council will encourage practices which enable resource consent applications to be considered in a similar manner.

Relationships between spatial layers

The plan uses zoning for existing marinas, mooring areas and marine farms to recognise areas where there is a high level of existing modification and where activities may have a relatively low impact.

Overlays exist in the plan for:

- sites or areas of significance to Māori
- areas of outstanding natural character
- natural features and landscapes (seascapes)
- significant indigenous biodiversity
- significant historic heritage
- national and regionally significant surf-breaks.

They are used to identify the different values of the CMA, and have additional objectives, policies and rules that are used to manage the potential adverse effects of activities.

Overlays are shown as layers on the maps to the plan and are described in the schedules to the plan in Part 3.

Spatial layer	Description / Function	Examples
Zones/Areas	A zone or area spatially maps and manages those parts of the CMA with common characteristics or where common outcomes are sought, by bundling compatible activities or effects together, and controlling those that are incompatible. There are three broad activity zones/areas in the plan.	1. Marinas – eg. Whangamata marina 2. Moorings – eg. Whitianga Mooring Area 3. Aquaculture Management Areas • Wilson Bay • Coromandel Marine Farming • Western Coromandel *(new)* • Colville *(new)*
Overlays	An overlay maps distinctive values which require management or protection in a different manner from underlying zone provisions.	• Outstanding Natural Character • Sites and Areas of Significance to Māori • Nationally significant surfbreaks
Development area	A development area spatially identifies and manages areas where site specific plans apply to determine future use or development.	• Te Ariki Tahi (Sugarloaf Wharf) • Kōpū Marine Precinct

INTERPRETATION

Definitions

Advisory note: *Definitions shaded light grey from the RMA, or other legislation as indicated. Those shaded light blue are from the NZCPS. The mandatory definitions required to be used in the plan by the National Planning Standards 2019 are shown in light orange shading.*

Term	Definition
abandoned	has that same meaning as in section 19(2) of the Marine and Coastal Area (Takutai Moana) Act 2011: *a structure is abandoned if the regional council with statutory functions in the part of the common marine and coastal area in which the structure is located has, after due inquiry, been unable to ascertain the identity or the whereabouts of the owner of the structure.*
abandoned structure	a structure for which a legal owner, or person willing to take responsibility for obtaining any required resource consent and undertaking maintenance and repair of the structure, cannot be identified or located by the Regional Council.
abrasive blasting	means the cleaning, smoothing, roughening, cutting or removal of part of the surface of any article by the use, as an abrasive, of a jet of sand, metal, shot or grit or other material propelled by a blast of compressed air or steam or water or by a wheel.
adaptive management approach	(a) means a systematic and iterative process of decision making that aims to reduce and manage uncertainty about the environmental effects of an activity over time through: (i) monitoring the activity and its effects; and (ii) making changes to management in response to the results of that monitoring; and (b) includes management by a staged development programme, each stage proceeding only when the monitoring of the biological or physical effects of the previous stage demonstrates that the adverse effects— (i) are within limits prescribed in the provisions of the relevant plan or proposed plan; and (ii) are reversible.
ambient air quality	means the general quality of the surrounding air, reflecting the cumulative effect of all activities, both anthropogenic and natural.
amenity values	has the same meaning as in section 2 of the RMA : *means those natural or physical qualities and characteristics of an area that contribute to people's appreciation of its pleasantness, aesthetic coherence, and cultural and recreational attributes.*
anchorage	means a place (enclosed or otherwise) used for anchoring vessels, whether the place is reserved for such purposes by the Council or not.
anchoring	The temporary securing of a vessel to the seabed by means of an anchor, cable or other device that is removed with the vessel when it leaves the site or anchorage. In this context "temporary" means less than one week and does not occur in the same general vicinity, for another month.
ancillary activity	means an activity that supports and is subsidiary to a primary activity
aquaculture	the farming of aquatic fish, shellfish, and plants, including seaweed
aquaculture activities	has the same meaning as in section 2 of the RMA: *(a) means any activity described in section 12 done for the purpose of the breeding, hatching, cultivating, rearing, or ongrowing of fish, aquatic life, or*

	seaweed for harvest if the breeding, hatching, cultivating, rearing, or ongrowing involves the occupation of a coastal marine area; and *(b) includes the taking of harvestable spat if the taking involves the occupation of a coastal marine area; but* *(c) does not include an activity specified in paragraph (a) if the fish, aquatic life, or seaweed—* *(i) are not in the exclusive and continuous possession or control of the person undertaking the activity; or* *(ii) cannot be distinguished or kept separate from naturally occurring fish, aquatic life, or seaweed; and* *(d) does not include an activity specified in paragraph (a) or (b) if the activity is carried out solely for the purpose of monitoring the environment*
aquaculture management area	means an area shown as a development area for commercial aquaculture in the maps to this plan and includes: • Wilson Bay (Areas A, B and C) • Coromandel Marine Farming Area • Western Coromandel Aquaculture Management Area • Colville Aquaculture Management Area
authorised marine farm	a marine farm that was lawfully established by lease or licence under the Marine Farming Act 1971, or a current marine farming permit under the Fisheries Act 1983, or a coastal permit under the Resource Management Act 1991.
authorised mooring holder	means a person who holds a current Resource Consent or Mooring Licence.
bed	has the same meaning as in section 2 of the RMA and means: *(a) in relation to any river—* *(i) for the purposes of esplanade reserves, esplanade strips, and subdivision, the space of land which the waters of the river cover at its annual fullest flow without overtopping its banks:* *(ii) in all other cases, the space of land which the waters of the river cover at its fullest flow without overtopping its banks; and* *(b) in relation to any lake, except a lake controlled by artificial means,—* *(i) for the purposes of esplanade reserves, esplanade strips, and subdivision, the space of land which the waters of the lake cover at its annual highest level without exceeding its margin:* *(ii) in all other cases, the space of land which the waters of the lake cover at its highest level without exceeding its margin; and* *(c) in relation to any lake controlled by artificial means, the space of land which the waters of the lake cover at its maximum permitted operating level; and* *(d) in relation to the sea, the submarine areas covered by the internal waters and the territorial sea.*
best practicable option	has the same meaning as in section 2 of the RMA: *in relation to a discharge of a contaminant or an emission of noise, means the best method for preventing or minimising the adverse effects on the environment having regard, among other things, to—* *(a) the nature of the discharge or emission and the sensitivity of the receiving environment to adverse effects; and* *(b) the financial implications, and the effects on the environment, of that option when compared with other options; and* *(c) the current state of technical knowledge and the likelihood that the option can be successfully applied.*
biofouling	Means the aquatic organisms such as micro-organisms, plants and animals that have accumulated on surfaces and structures immersed in or exposed to the aquatic environment.

biogas	means the mixture of gases that is produced by anaerobic microbial decomposition of organic matter and that principally comprises methane and carbon dioxide together with lesser amounts of hydrogen sulphide, water vapour, or other gases (Gas Act 1992 reprinted Aug 2020).
channel clearance	The clearance of vegetation and debris from river channels and river mouths to maintain efficient water flow, reduce the risk of flooding and erosion, maintain structures, and remove plant pest species and remove hazards for navigational uses. <u>Includes:</u> 1. clearing vegetation and debris or cutting vegetation in rivers and streams. 2. maintenance of land drainage and stormwater systems. 3. maintenance and clearing of road and drainage and water tables. <u>Excludes:</u> 1. Maintenance or capital dredging
cleanfill	a. For the purposes of this Plan, cleanfill consists of the following materials: i. uncontaminated soil and/or sand ii. uncontaminated clay iii. uncontaminated gravel or rock iv. uncontaminated brick and rubble v. general demolition material that is not contaminated by substances subject to biological, chemical, and/or physical breakdown. b. For the purposes of this Plan, the following materials are not permitted in a cleanfill: i. asphalt, asphalt concrete and tarseal ii. sawdust and/or bark iii. combustible matter iv. organic matter including timber, trees, and/or garden trimmings v. sludges vi. contaminated soil vii. domestic, industrial or commercial waste viii. hazardous waste ix. medical or clinical waste. c. The deposit shall not contain any hazardous substances.
coastal environment	the environment where the coast is a significant part or element, comprising at least: a. the coastal marine area; b. islands within the coastal marine area; c. areas where coastal processes, qualities or influences are significant, including coastal lakes, lagoons, tidal estuaries, salt marshes, coastal wetlands, and the margins of these; d. areas at risk from coastal hazards; e. coastal vegetation and the habitat of indigenous coastal species, including migratory birds; f. elements and features that contribute to natural character, visual qualities or amenity values; g. items of cultural and historic heritage in the coastal marine area or on the coast; h. inter-related coastal marine and terrestrial systems, including the intertidal zone; and i. physical resources and built facilities, including infrastructure, that have modified the coastal environment. *<u>Advisory note:</u>*

	An indicative coastal environment line is shown in the planning maps to the operative Waikato Regional Policy Statement - Te Tauaki Kaupapahere Te-Rohe O Waikato.
coastal hazard	Subset of *natural hazards* covering tidal or coastal storm inundation, rising sea level, tsunami or meteorological tsunami inundation, coastal erosion (shorelines or cliffs), rise in groundwater levels from storm tides and sea-level rise (plus associated liquefaction), and salinisation of surface fresh waters and groundwater aquifers.
coastal marine area	has the same meaning as in section 2 of the RMA: *means the foreshore, seabed, and coastal water, and the air space above the water—* *(a) of which the seaward boundary is the outer limits of the territorial sea:* *(b) of which the landward boundary is the line of mean high water springs, except that where that line crosses a river, the landward boundary at that point shall be whichever is the lesser of—* *(i) 1 kilometre upstream from the mouth of the river; or* *(ii) the point upstream that is calculated by multiplying the width of the river mouth by 5*
coastal water	has the same meaning as in section 2 of the RMA: *means seawater within the outer limits of the territorial sea and includes —* *(a) seawater with a substantial fresh water component; and* *(b) seawater in estuaries, fiords, inlets, harbours, or embayments.*
commercial aquaculture	means aquaculture that is undertaken with the primary purpose of producing aquaculture products for sale.
common marine and coastal area	has the same meaning as in section 9(1) of the Marine and Coastal Area (Takutai Moana) Act 2011: *means the marine and coastal area other than—* *(a) specified freehold land located in that area; and* *(b) any area that is owned by the Crown and has the status of any of the following kinds:* *(i) a conservation area within the meaning of section 2(1) of the Conservation Act 1987:* *(iii) a national park within the meaning of section 2 of the National Parks Act 1980:* *(iii) a reserve within the meaning of section 2(1) of the Reserves Act 1977; and* *(c) the bed of Te Whaanga Lagoon in the Chatham Islands*
community based spray programme	means programmes which the community has funded rather than a single landowner. These programmes would include spraying of drains as part of the maintenance programme for drainage areas, spraying of road verges or programmes where a number of landowners engage a single spray contractor. means programmes which the community has funded rather than a single landowner. These programmes would include spraying of drains as part of the maintenance programme for drainage areas, spraying of road verges or programmes where a number of landowners engage a single spray contractor.
Comprehensive Stormwater Discharge Consent	A Comprehensive Stormwater Discharge Consent authorises multiple stormwater diversion and discharge activities in urban settlements (including coastal settlements) covered by an integrated catchment management plan in one consent rather than multiple consents.
contact re-entry time	means the minimum time required to elapse after application of agrichemicals before unprotected re-entry can take place into a treated area where skin contact with a treated surface is likely to take place. This includes operations of

	land thinning, hand pruning, hand weeding and walking on any spray surfaces, for whatever reason, without adequate foot protection
contaminant	has the same meaning as in section 2 of the RMA: *includes any substance (including gases, odorous compounds, liquids, solids, and microorganisms) or energy (excluding noise) or heat, that either by itself or in combination with the same, similar, or other substances, energy, or heat— (a) when discharged into water, changes or is likely to change the physical, chemical, or biological condition of water; or (b) when discharged onto or into land or into air, changes or is likely to change the physical, chemical, or biological condition of the land or air onto or into which it is discharged.*
development areas	Te Ariki Tahi (Sugarloaf Wharf) and Kōpū Marine Precinct as mapped.
discharge	has the same meaning as in section 2 of the RMA: *includes emit, deposit, and allow to escape.*
disturbance	means the disruption of a current state, including the activities of excavation, extraction, dredging, drilling and tunnelling.
dry abrasive blasting	means abrasive blasting using materials to which no water has been added.
ecosystem-based management	A holistic and inclusive way to manage marine environments and the competing uses for, demands on, and ways that New Zealanders value them, which recognises the interactions within ecosystems (including people) and identifies the impacts of activities within this context; is informed by science and mātauranga Māori, and provides for adaptive management approaches, where appropriate.
effect	has the same meaning as in section 3 of the RMA and includes— *(a) any positive or adverse effect; and (b) any temporary or permanent effect; and (c) any past, present, or future effect; and (d) any cumulative effect which arises over time or in combination with other effects— regardless of the scale, intensity, duration, or frequency of the effect, and also includes— (e) any potential effect of high probability; and (f) any potential effect of low probability which has a high potential impact.*
environment	has the same meaning as in section 2 of the RMA and includes— *(a) ecosystems and their constituent parts, including people and communities; and (b) all natural and physical resources; and (c) amenity values; and (d) the social, economic, aesthetic, and cultural conditions which affect the matters stated in paragraphs (a) to (c) or which are affected by those matters.*
excessive noise	Means (1) any noise that is under human control and of such a nature as to unreasonably interfere with the peace, comfort, and convenience of any person (other than a person in or at the place from which the noise is being emitted), but does not include any noise emitted by any: (a) aircraft being operated during, or immediately before or after, flight; or (b) vehicle being driven on a road (within the meaning of section 2(1) of the Land Transport Act 1998); or (c) train, other than when being tested (when stationary), maintained, loaded, or unloaded; but (2) without limiting (1) excessive noise includes: (a) noise that exceeds a standard for noise prescribed by a national environmental standard; and (b) may include noise emitted by— (i) a musical instrument; or (ii) an electrical appliance; or (iii) a machine, however powered; or

	(iv) a person or group of persons; or (v) an explosion or vibration.
exotic organism	Means a living plant, animal, or other living thing that is not native to New Zealand. This includes plants, animals, algae (etc) that have been introduced by accident or imported for particular use.
exploration	Any activity undertaken for the purpose of identifying mineral deposits or occurrences and evaluating the feasibility of mining particular deposits or occurrences of 1 or more minerals; and includes any drilling, dredging, or excavations (whether surface or subsurface) that are reasonably necessary to determine the nature and size of a mineral deposit or occurrence; and to explore has a corresponding meaning.
fed aquaculture	farming of any aquatic organism that involves the discharge of feed into the coastal marine area and includes finfish farming.
functional need	means the need for a proposal or activity to traverse, locate or operate in a particular environment because the activity can only occur in that environment.
hand held spray equipment	means a hand held sprayer with a single nozzle, used for spot spraying and operated at a pressure no greater than 200kpa (30psi) and excludes high pressure handguns
hard protection structure	includes a seawall, rock revetment, groyne, breakwater, stop bank, retaining wall or comparable structure or modification to the seabed, foreshore or coastal land that has the primary purpose or effect of protecting an activity from a coastal hazard, including erosion.
harmful aquatic organisms	aquatic organisms which, if introduced into coastal water, may adversely affect the environment or biological diversity, pose a threat to human health, or interfere with legitimate use or protection of natural and physical resources in the coastal environment.
hazardous substance	has the same meaning as in section 2 of the RMA: *includes, but is not limited to, any substance defined in section 2 of the Hazardous Substances and New Organisms Act 1996 as a hazardous substance. The Hazardous Substances and New Organisms Act 1996 defines hazardous substances as meaning, unless expressly provided otherwise by regulations or an EPA notice, any substance—* *(a) with 1 or more of the following intrinsic properties:* *(i) explosiveness:* *(ii) flammability:* *(iii) a capacity to oxidise:* *(iv) corrosiveness:* *(v) toxicity (including chronic toxicity):* *(vi) ecotoxicity, with or without bioaccumulation; or* *(b) which on contact with air or water (other than air or water where the temperature or pressure has been artificially increased or decreased) generates a substance with any 1 or more of the properties specified in paragraph (a).*
high value areas	areas identified as having values that identify their characteristics or attributes as significant under section 6 RMA and the NZCPS.
historic heritage	has the same meaning as in section 2 of the RMA: *(a) means those natural and physical resources that contribute to an understanding and appreciation of New Zealand's history and cultures, deriving from any of the following qualities:* *(i) archaeological:* *(ii) architectural:* *(iii) cultural:* *(iv) historic:* *(v) scientific:*

	(vi) technological; and *(b) includes—* *(i) historic sites, structures, places, and areas; and* *(ii) archaeological sites; and* *(iii) sites of significance to Māori, including wāhi tapu; and* *(iv) surroundings associated with the natural and physical resources*
in-water cleaning	The physical removal of biofouling and/or anti-fouling coating surface deposits from submerged surfaces. For the purposes of these guidelines, 'in-water' refers to the parts of a vessel or movable structure that are either below the load line or normally submerged and/or are coated in anti-fouling coating.
incineration	means the application of a combustion process under controlled conditions to convert waste into ash and gases. The combustion system controls oxygen, temperature, turbulence and residence time. Incinerator has a corresponding meaning
land	has the same meaning as in section 2 of the RMA : *(a) includes land covered by water and the airspace above land; and* *(b) in a national environmental standard dealing with a regional council function under section 30 or a regional rule, does not include the bed of a lake or river; and* *(c) in a national environmental standard dealing with a territorial authority function under section 31 or a district rule, includes the surface of water in a lake or river.*
Level of fouling (LOF) scale	Expressed in the international Level of Fouling (LOF) – A scale used to assess the level of macrofouling on vessels, ranging from 1 to 5 based on the percentage macrofouling cover. 1 = Slime layer fouling only. Nil macrofouling cover. 5 = Light fouling. Hull covered in biofilm and 1-2 very small patches of macrofouling. 1 – 5 per cent macrofouling cover. 5 = Considerable fouling. Presence of biofilm, and macrofouling still patchy but clearly visible. 6 – 15 per cent macrofouling cover. 4 = Extensive fouling. Presence of biofilm, and abundant fouling assemblages consisting of more than one species. 16 – 40 per cent macrofouling cover. 5 = Very heavy fouling. Diverse assemblages covering most of visible hull surfaces. 41 – 100 per cent macrofouling cover.
livestock	(where used in livestock exclusion provisions in this Plan): Dairy cows, dairy support cattle, beef cattle, pigs, and deer.
macrofouling	Refers to large, distinct multicellular organisms visible to the human eye, such as barnacles, tubeworms, mussels, fronds of algae and other large attached or mobile organisms.
maimai	a small shelter used for hunting, normally a duckshooter's hide or stand.
maintenance	in relation to a structure, means the ongoing and regular activities that aid in the preservation of a structure and includes repair works conducted for the purpose of keeping the structure in good condition and/or working efficiently and where the character, intensity and scale of the structure remains the same.
maintenance dredging	Excavating material from the bed of the CMA and removing the excavated material, where the excavation is for the purpose of removing accumulated sediment so that the seabed is returned to previously approved levels.
maintenance of ecological function	Take action to preserve or retain natural species diversity (including foundational species) from loss and keep the functioning of ecological complexes effective and unimpaired from deterioration.

mangrove removal	Partially or wholly removing, burying or clearing mangroves. Includes: • pruning mangrove branches; • pulling out mangrove seedlings; • removing mangroves at the trunk; and removing mangrove root systems.
mangrove seedlings	A mangrove with: • a single supple stem and is no more than 60cm tall; and • shows no reproductive capability.
marae-based aquaculture	Aquaculture with the following attributes: (a) the purpose of the aquaculture activities is to improve traditional customary kaimoana provision for marae, and (b) the farmed kaimoana is not for sale, and (c) the area of occupation is no more than one hectare per marae, and (d) the area of occupation is within the area traditionally harvested by the marae. Sale includes: i. every method of disposition for valuable consideration, including barter, and ii. the disposition to an agent for sale on consignment, and iii. offering or attempting to sell, or receiving or having in possession for sale, or exposing for sale, or sending or delivering for sale, or causing or permitting to be sold, offered, or exposed for sale, and iv. disposal by way of gambling (as that term is defined in section 4(1) of the Gambling Act 2003), and v. the use by a person of fish, aquatic life, or seaweed as bait in that person's commercial fishing operations, and vi. any other use by a person of fish, aquatic life, or seaweed as part of that person's commercial activities. *<u>Note:</u> the organisations entitled to hold coastal permits for marae-based aquaculture are:* *1. a marae committee of a Māori reservation gazetted for the purposes of a marae, in accordance with Te Ture Whenua Māori Act 1992, or* *2. a marae committee of a marae recognised by, and formally affiliated to, a mandated iwi organisation (as recognised in the Māori Fisheries Act 2004).*
marina area	means an area approved for marina activities, including vessel berthing and associated activities, as shown in Schedule 2, and includes the Thames, Tairua, Whitianga, and Whangamatā marinas.
marine facilities	include ports, dry docks, slipways, moorings, marinas, moorings, boat servicing grids, wharves, jetties and ramps, offshore platforms, navigational aids, and associated structures and activities.
marine farm	a single contiguous spatial area used for aquaculture activities (and for which authorisation is held by the same consent holder)
marine farming	the activities of breeding, hatching, collection, cultivation, rearing, on-growing or harvesting of fin fish, shellfish, aquatic life or marine vegetation (and includes spat catching and spat holding), and includes the placement or erection of structures or other equipment, the deposition or disturbance of matter on the foreshore and/or seabed, discharges into and from the marine farm, and the use and occupation of the foreshore, seabed or water in the CMA.
marine pest	Any identified or suspected aquatic organism listed in the following: • Waikato Regional Pest Management Plan

	• Biosecurity (Notifiable Organisms) Order 2016 (or subsequent amendments) administered by the Ministry for Primary Industries • Unwanted Organisms Register held by the Ministry for Primary Industries.
mātauranga Māori	Māori customary knowledge, traditional knowledge or intergenerational knowledge.
mature mangroves	These are any plants that are multi-stemmed and >60cm in height, or any mangrove plant that is not defined as a seedling.
microfouling	Refers to a layer of microscopic organisms including bacteria and diatoms and the slimy substances they produce. It is often referred to as a 'slime layer' and can be easily removed by gently passing a finger over the surface.
mixing zone	in relation to all coastal waters, a distance 20 metres from the point of discharge, or for the purpose of activities that require resource consent, the zone of reasonable mixing will be determined on a case by case basis. In such circumstances, the mixing zone is where the discharge of a contaminant results in that contaminant (or any other contaminant emanating as a result of a natural process from that contaminant) entering coastal waters.
mooring	means any structure, screw anchor, weight, device, or other associated equipment, which is placed in or on the foreshore or seabed, to secure a vessel; and includes pole moorings, swing moorings, trot moorings and other similar structures.
mooring area	means an area identified in Schedule 2 and in the maps to the Waikato Regional Coastal Plan for the mooring of vessels.
mooring licence	means a licence issued to the licence holder for a mooring by the Waikato Regional Council in accordance with the NS Bylaw.
motor vehicle	has the same meaning as in section 2 of the Land Transport Act 1998: *means a vehicle drawn or propelled by mechanical power; and includes a trailer; but does not include —* *(i) a vehicle running on rails; or* *(ii) a trailer (other than a trailer designed solely for the carriage of goods) that is designed and used exclusively as part of the armament of the New Zealand Defence Force; or* *(iii) a trailer running on 1 wheel and designed exclusively as a speed measuring device or for testing the wear of vehicle tyres; or* *(iv) a vehicle designed for amusement purposes and used exclusively within a place of recreation, amusement, or entertainment to which the public does not have access with motor vehicle; or* *(v) a pedestrian-controlled machine; or* *(vi) a vehicle that the Agency has declared under section 168A is not a motor vehicle; or* (vii) *a mobility device*
moveable structure	A structure or installation deployed in aquatic environments that can be moved between locations. Movable structures include (but are not limited to) oil and other exploration rigs, floating dry-docks, pontoons, aquaculture installations, navigational structures.
natural and physical resources	has the same meaning as in section 2 of the RMA: *Includes land, water, air, soil, minerals, and energy, all forms of plants and animals (whether native to New Zealand or introduced), and all structures.*
natural hazard	has the same meaning as in section 2 of the RMA: *means any atmospheric or earth or water related occurrence (including earthquake, tsunami, erosion, volcanic and geothermal activity, landslip, subsidence, sedimentation, wind, drought, fire, or flooding) the action of which*

	adversely affects or may adversely affect human life, property, or other aspects of the environment.
niche areas	Areas on a vessel or movable structure more susceptible to biofouling accumulation due to different hydrodynamic forces, susceptibility to anti-fouling coating wear or damage or absence of anti-fouling coatings. They include, but are not limited to, waterline, sea chests, bow thrusters, propeller shafts, inlet gratings, jack-up legs, moon pools, bollards, braces and dry-docking support strips.
noise	has the same meaning as in section 2 of the RMA: *includes vibration.*
notional boundary	means a line 20 metres from any side of a residential unit or other building used for a noise sensitive activity, or the legal boundary where this is closer to such a building.
occupy	has the same meaning as in section 2 of the RMA: *means the activity of occupying any part of the coastal marine area—* *(a) where the occupation is reasonably necessary for another activity; and* *(b) where it is to the exclusion of all or any class of persons who are not expressly allowed to occupy that part of the coastal marine area by a rule in a regional coastal plan and in any relevant proposed regional coastal plan or by a resource consent; and* *(c) for a period of time and in a way that, but for a rule in the regional coastal plan and in any relevant proposed regional coastal plan or the holding of a resource consent under this Act, a lease or licence to occupy that part of the coastal marine area would be necessary to give effect to the exclusion of other persons, whether in a physical or legal sense.*
operational need	means the need for a proposal or activity to traverse, locate or operate in a particular environment because of technical, logistical or operational characteristics or constraints.
personal water craft (jetski)	A power-driven vessel that: has a fully enclosed hull; does not take on water if capsized; and is designed to be operated by a person standing, sitting astride, or kneeling on it, but not seated within it. *Waikato NS Bylaw definition*
precautionary approach	a risk management approach which favours caution where an activity may have significant or irreversible effects and where there is imperfect information about the effects of an activity. On a case-by-case basis, it may be implemented through an avoidance response, or an adaptive management method where this would sufficiently diminish risk and uncertainty.
prohibited mooring area	means an area identified in Schedule 2 and in the maps to the Waikato Regional Coastal Plan in which the mooring of vessels is prohibited and for which no resource consent can be granted.
public amenity area	means those areas to which the public have right of access under statute or regulation.
raft	has the same meaning as in section 2 of the RMA : *means any moored floating platform which is not self-propelled; and includes platforms that provide buoyancy support for the surfaces on which fish or marine vegetation are cultivated or for any cage or other device used to contain or restrain fish or marine vegetation; but does not include booms situated on lakes subject to artificial control which have been installed to ensure the safe operation of electricity generating facilities.*

reclamation	An activity that results in the formation of permanent land located above mean high water springs from land that was formerly below the line of mean high water springs (in the coastal marine area). Reclamation does not include: a. The formation of land above mean high water springs as a result of natural processes, including accretion; or b. Structures such as breakwaters, moles, groynes, seawalls or jetties.
regionally significant infrastructure	as defined in the operative Waikato Regional Policy Statement defines 'regionally significant infrastructure' as follows: ***Regionally significant infrastructure*** *– includes:* *a. pipelines for the distribution or transmission of natural or manufactured gas or petroleum;* *b.* ***infrastructure*** *required to permit telecommunication as defined in the Telecommunications Act 2001;* *c. radio apparatus as defined in section 2(1) of the Radio Communications Act 1989;* *d. the national electricity grid, as defined by the Electricity Industry Act 2010;* *e. a network (as defined in the Electricity Industry Act 2010);* *f.* ***infrastructure*** *for the generation and/ or conveyance of electricity that is fed into the national grid or a network (as defined in the Electricity Industry Act 2010);* *g. significant transport corridors as defined in Map 6.1 and 6.1A [of the RPS];* *h.* ***lifeline utilities****, as defined in the Civil Defence and Emergency Management Act 2002, and their associated essential* ***infrastructure*** *and services;* *i. municipal wastewater treatment plants, water supply treatment plants and bulk water supply, wastewater conveyance and storage systems, municipal supply dams (including Mangatangi and Mangatawhiri water supply dams) and ancillary* ***infrastructure****;* *j. flood and drainage* ***infrastructure*** *managed by Waikato Regional Council;* *k. Hamilton City bus terminal and Hamilton Railway Station terminus; and* *l. Hamilton International Airport.*
restricted anchorage area	means any area designated as such in the NS Bylaw.
River and Flood Protection Schemes	Activities undertaken under approved river and flood protection schemes, or land drainage schemes, managed by Waikato Regional Council in accordance with the Land Drainage Act 1908, Soil Conservation and Rivers Control Act 1948, Taupiri Drainage and River District Act 1929 and the Resource Management Act 1991.
sea level rise	trend of annual mean sea level over timescales of at least three or more decades. Must be tied to one of the following two types: global – overall rise in absolute sea level in the world's oceans; or relative – net rise relative to the local landmass (that may be subsiding or being uplifted)
sewage	means human excrement and urine.
Significant Indigenous Biodiversity Area A (SIBA-A)	Areas which, due to their physical form, scale or inherent indigenous biodiversity values, are considered to be the most valuable to threatened species, critical habitat and vulnerable ecosystem types. They are also considered to be most vulnerable to any adverse effects of inappropriate use and development.

Significant Indigenous Biodiversity Area B (SIBA-B)	These are areas that have indigenous biodiversity significance and values which do not warrant an SIBA-A identification as they generally include more resilient ecosystem types, or ecosystem types that are generally more widespread throughout the region.
significant surf break	surf breaks of national or regional significance listed in Schedule 8A or 8B.
sensitive area	means an activity that is particularly sensitive to adverse effects associated with air contaminant discharges either due to the vulnerability of the population or area exposed to the contaminant, or due to the potential for people to be exposed for prolonged periods and may include: (a) residential buildings and areas (including marae). (b) childcare centre, schools, educational facilities. (c) hospitals, nursing homes, aged care facilities. (d) offices, consulting rooms, gymnasiums, community centre. (e) hotels, motels, caravan parks, camping areas, tourist accommodation. (f) correctional facilities. (g) public amenity areas. (h) manufacturing or storage of food or beverages. (i) manufacturing or storage of electronics. (j) public water supply catchments and intakes. (k) incompatible crops or farming systems (e.g. organic farms, greenhouses).
soft protection	nature-based solutions intended to work with natural processes rather than against them to protect an activity from a coastal hazard, including erosion. Examples of soft protection include: • beach replenishment or nourishment • planting • back beach reconstruction (dune building) • slope profile modification access restriction (in combination with other soft options).
spat	as defined in the NES-MA: *means any stage in the life cycle of the following molluscs:* *(a) dredge oysters less than 40 mm in length:* *(b) scallops less than 20 mm in length:* *(c) cockles less than 20 mm in length:* *(d) green-lipped mussels (greenshell mussels) less than 40 mm in length:* *(e) blue mussels less than 30 mm in length:* *(f) Pacific oysters less than 37 mm in length*
spat catching	as defined in the NES-MA: *means the obtaining or retention of spat and the harvesting of spat from marine farm structures*
spot spraying	means the application of agrichemicals targeted at a discrete individual plants each not exceeding two square metres.
stormwater	means run-off that has been intercepted, channelled, diverted, intensified or accelerated by human modification of a land surface, or run-off from the surface of any structure, as a result of precipitation and includes any contaminants contained within.
structure	has the same meaning as in section 2 of the RMA : *means any building, equipment, device, or other facility, made by people and which is fixed to land; and includes any raft.*
surf break	A natural feature that is comprised of swell, currents, water levels, seabed morphology, and wind. The hydrodynamic character of the ocean (swell,

	currents and water levels) combines with seabed morphology and winds to give rise to a "surfable wave". A surf break includes the "swell corridor" through which the swell travels, and the morphology of the seabed of that wave corridor, through to the point where waves created by the swell dissipate and become non-surfable. "Swell corridor" means the region offshore of a surf break where ocean swell travels and transforms to a "surfable wave". "Surfable wave" means a wave that can be caught and ridden by a surfer. Surfable waves have a wave breaking point that peels along the unbroken wave crest so that the surfer is propelled laterally along the wave crest.
sustainable management	has the same meaning as in section 5 of the RMA : *means managing the use, development, and protection of natural and physical resources in a way, or at a rate, which enables people and communities to provide for their social, economic, and cultural well-being and for their health and safety while— (a) sustaining the potential of natural and physical resources (excluding minerals) to meet the reasonably foreseeable needs of future generations; and (b) safeguarding the life-supporting capacity of air, water, soil, and ecosystems; and (c) avoiding, remedying, or mitigating any adverse effects of activities on the environment.*
tāonga tūturu	treasured artefact
taxa	Named biological classification units assigned to individuals or sets of species (eg species, subspecies, genus, order, variety).
temporary	means an activity that lasts no longer than one week and does not recur for another month.
temporary military training activity	means a temporary activity undertaken for the training of any component of the New Zealand Defence Force (including with allied forces) for any defence purpose. Defence purposes are those purposes for which a defence force may be raised and maintained under section 5 of the Defence Act 1990 which are: (a) the defence of New Zealand, and of any area for the defence of which New Zealand is responsible under any Act: (b) the protection of the interests of New Zealand, whether in New Zealand or elsewhere: (c) the contribution of forces under collective security treaties, agreements, or arrangements: (d) the contribution of forces to, or for any of the purposes of, the United Nations, or in association with other organisations or States and in accordance with the principles of the Charter of the United Nations: (e) the provision of assistance to the civil power either in New Zealand or elsewhere in time of emergency: (f) the provision of any public service.
territorial authority	has the same meaning as in section 5 of the Local Government Act 2002 : *means a city council or a district council named in Part 2 of Schedule 2.*
tikanga Māori	has the same definition as Section 2 RMA being: *Māori customary values and practices.* *Note: tikanga can be described as lore, custom, or practices based on the Māori belief system. The application of tikanga is diverse and can vary depending upon when and where an event takes place. Tikanga provides a framework for rules that govern harvesting, the care and respect for customary resources and the environment.*
toxicants	any substance that causes injury or illness or death of a living organism.
unwanted organism	Has the same meaning as in section 2 of the Biosecurity Act 1993:

	means any organism that a chief technical officer believes is capable or potentially capable of causing unwanted harm to any natural and physical resources or human health; and *(a) includes—* *(i) any new organism, if the Authority has declined approval to import that organism; and* *(ii) any organism specified in Schedule 2 of the Hazardous Substances and New Organisms Act 1996; but* *(b) does not include any organism approved for importation under the Hazardous Substances and New Organisms Act 1996, unless—* *(i) the organism is an organism which has escaped from a containment facility; or* *a chief technical officer, after consulting the Authority and taking into account any comments made by the Authority concerning the organism, believes that the organism is capable or potentially capable of causing unwanted harm to any natural and physical resources or human health.*
vessel	means every description of a boat or a craft used in navigation on the water, whether or not it has any means of propulsion; and includes a: barge, lighter, or other like vessel, hovercraft or other thing deriving full or partial support in the atmosphere from the reaction of air against the surface of the water over which it operates, submarine or other submersible, seaplane while on the surface of the water, personal water craft (jetski), raft; or kite board, sailboard or paddle board but does not include a surfboard.
wastewater	means any combination of two or more the following wastes: sewage, greywater or industrial and trade waste.
water	has the same meaning as in section 2 of the RMA : *(a) means water in all its physical forms whether flowing or not and whether over or under the ground: (b) includes fresh water, coastal water, and geothermal water: (c) does not include water in any form while in any pipe, tank, or cistern.*
wetland	has the same meaning as in section 2 of the RMA : *includes permanently or intermittently wet areas, shallow water, and land water margins that support a natural ecosystem of plants and animals that are adapted to wet conditions.*

Abbreviations

Abbreviations	Full term
AEE	Assessment of Environmental Effects
ASCV	Area of Significant Cultural Value
CMA	Coastal Marine Area
DMA	Defined Mooring Area
JMA	Joint Management Agreement
NES	National environmental standard
NES-MA	National Environmental Standard for Marine Aquaculture 2020
NPS	National policy statement
NS	Waikato Regional Council 2013 Navigation Safety Bylaw (revised edition 2020)
NZCPS	New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement 2010
ONC	Outstanding natural character
RMA	Resource Management Act 1991
RPS	Waikato Regional Policy Statement: Te Tauākī Kaupapahere Te-Rohe O Waikato
SIB	Significant Indigenous Biodiversity
XMA	Prohibited Mooring Area

Glossary of Māori terms

The terms below are explanations of Māori terms used in the Regional Coastal Plan rather than strict definitions.

Term	Explanation
hapū	kinship group, section of a large kinship group and the primary political unit in traditional Māori society
iwi	extended kinship group- often refers to a large group of people descended from a common ancestor and associated with a distinct territory
iwi/hapū management plans	planning documents that are recognised by an iwi authority, relevant to the resource management issues of the region/district/rohe and/or lodged with the relevant local authority
kāinga	village, settlement, habitation, habitat, dwelling.
kaitiakitanga	the exercise of guardianship by the tangata whenua of an area in accordance with tikanga Māori in relation to natural and physical resources; and includes the ethic of stewardship
karakia	to recite ritual chants, say grace or recite prayer
mahinga kai	garden, cultivation, food-gathering place. e.g. repo (wetlands), taku taimoana (fishing grounds)
mana whenua	Māori with ancestral claims to a particular area of land resources. Literally, translated as "authority over the land". Whānau, hapū, and iwi are mana whenua of a particular rohe
manaakitanga	hospitality, kindness, generosity, support – the process of showing respect, generosity and care for others
mātauranga	scientific and spiritual indigenous knowledge and related oral histories
mauri	the life principle instilled in objects by Atua. Mauri is also the life principle that gives being and form to all things in the universe.
r*ā*hui	a tool used by kaitiaki to manage natural resources and are declared by kaitiaki to restrict access to and use of natural resources. Rāhui is a form of temporary restriction relating to the condition of a resource and the nature of the tapu in or around a specific area. Rāhui resemble prohibitions.
rohe	boundary, district, region, territory, area, border (rohe moana is within the coastal marine area)
takiwā	district, area, territory, vicinity, region
tangata whenua	people of the land
taiapure	a coastal fishing area of special significance to Māori
tapu	the sacred, dedicated, protected or that which is not ordinary or everyday. Tapu is the state or condition of a person or objects placed under the patronage of Atua. It is directly related to the mauri of a person, area or object and recognises an appreciation and respect of another life force.
tikanga	customary practices or behaviours
takutai moana	coast, foreshore and seabed
wāhi taonga	special places e.g. waka landing sites
wāhi tapu	sacred or spiritual places e.g. battle sites, urupā, burial site
wāhi tīpuna	places with special cultural, scenic or amenity values eg. important landmarks, boundary markers
wāhi tūpuna	a place associated with traditional uses

NATIONAL DIRECTION INSTRUMENTS

National policy statements and New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement

National policy statements (NPSs) and the New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement (NZCPS) form part of the Resource Management Act's policy framework and are prepared by central government. NPSs and the NZCPS contain objectives, polices and methods that must be given effect to by policy statements and plans. NPSs and the NZCPS must also be given regard to by consent authorities when making decisions on resource consent applications, alongside other considerations.

The following table provides an overview of whether any relevant review/s of the Waikato Regional Coastal Plan has been undertaken in relation to NPSs and the NZCPS.

National Policy Statements	**Details of the Policy Statement and/or Plan review or relevant change to give effect (fully or partially) to each National Policy Statement**
National Policy Statement for Freshwater Management 2020	This policy statement has been reviewed and has requirements on coastal and estuarine waters
National Policy Statement on Urban Development 2020	This national policy statement does not apply to the plan
National Policy Statement on Renewable Electricity Generation 2011	The policy statement has been reviewed
New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement 2010	The policy statement has been reviewed
National Policy Statement on Electricity Transmission 2008	The policy statement has been reviewed
Hauraki Gulf Marine Park Act 2000 (sections 7 and 8)	The Hauraki Gulf Marine Park Act 2000 has been reviewed and extends over the eastern portion of the Waikato region

National environmental standards

National environmental standards (NESs) are prepared by central government and can prescribe technical standards, methods (including rules) and/or other requirements for environmental matters throughout the whole country or specific areas. If an activity doesn't comply with an NES, it is likely to require a resource consent. NESs must be observed and enforced by local authorities. The following NESs are currently in force:

- Resource Management (National Environmental Standards for Storing Tyres Outdoors) Regulations 2021
- Resource Management (National Environmental Standards for Freshwater) Regulations 2020
- Resource Management (National Environmental Standards for Marine Aquaculture) Regulations 2020
- Resource Management (National Environmental Standard on Plantation Forestry) Regulations 2017
- Resource Management (National Environmental Standards for Telecommunication Facilities) Regulations 2016
- Resource Management (National Environmental Standard for Assessing and Managing Contaminants in Soil to Protect Human Health) Regulations 2011
- Resource Management (National Environmental Standards for Electricity Transmission Activities) Regulations 2009
- Resource Management (National Environmental Standard for Sources of Drinking Water) Regulations 2007
- Resource Management (National Environmental Standards for Air Quality) Regulations 2004 (amended 2011)

Regulations

The regulations included in this chapter come under the Resource Management Act 1991 (excluding the national environmental standards listed above). These regulations are:

- Whitebait Fishing Regulations 2021
- Resource Management (Exemption) Regulations 2017
- Resource Management (Discount on Administrative Charges) Regulations 2010
- Resource Management (Measurement and Reporting of Water Takes) Regulations 2010
- Resource Management (Forms, Fees, and Procedure) Regulations 2003
- Resource Management (Infringement Offences) Regulations 1999
- Resource Management (Marine Pollution) Regulations 1998
- Resource Management (Exemption) Regulations 1996

2 Tangata whenua

Ko te moana, ehara rawa i te wai kau. Nō Tangaroa kē tēnā marae. He maha ōna hua e ora ai, ngā manu o te rangi, te iwi ki te whenua.

The sea is not any water. It is the marae of Tangaroa. It yields life for many things, the birds in the sky, the people upon the land.

(Te Ahukaramū Charles Royal 1989)

Recognising the te ao Māori worldview

The Māori world view (te ao Māori) acknowledges the interconnectedness and interrelationship of all living and non-living things. This holistic approach, seeking to understand the total system, not just parts of it, is necessary to create solutions to 'wicked' problems that minimise negative repercussions in other parts of the system.

The inclusion of te ao Māori in scientific research can deepen our collective understanding of connections, interdependencies and long-term intergenerational perspectives.

Opening up research to include Māori values and mātauranga Māori (Māori knowledge) is also part of this evolution. Māori values are centred around the obligation to foster reciprocal relationships with all aspects of the environment, living and non-living.

Mātauranga Māori is highly transdisciplinary and integrative in its approach to building new knowledge, through the organising principle of whakapapa (literally meaning 'to layer').

This system of whakapapa means that many Māori take an intergenerational view of the impacts of the actions we take now. This ultra-long-term perspective is another important frame of reference in science and an important incentive for change. All landowners feel a duty to leave the land and water they care for in good condition for their grandchildren and generations to come.

There is emerging evidence to suggest that the processes used in Māori science have an important role in removing the walls between scientific disciplines and helping teams of scientists with different areas of expertise to integrate their knowledge. This can help transdisciplinary research teams develop integrated methods to identify practical and sustainable solutions.

As ocean navigators, Māori have a rich history and tradition with the sea, which figures prominently in their world view. In some traditions the oceans' depths are considered to be the origin and source of all life. The islands are believed to be fish, pulled up from beneath the sea, and humans are thought to have evolved from aquatic beginnings. The sea has dominated traditional Māori life for many practical reasons as it was an essential source of food and other resources.

Correspondingly, all tangata whenua groups within the Waikato region have an affiliation with the coastal marine area. Māori migration patterns point to initial occupation and settlement beginning in coastal areas, with some groups remaining while others moved inland. Genealogical ties expressed in whakapapa continue to maintain ongoing connection amongst these groups.

Tangata whenua groups within our region are numerous with predominant tribal affiliations across the region coming from the Tainui and Te Arawa waka and some groups having affiliation to Mataatua, Horouta and Aotea waka.

Every tangata whenua group has developed their own perspectives, obligations and values that approach environmental management in a different way but remain founded in commonalities held together through the expression of a te ao Māori worldview. Key relevant commonly held tangata whenua values include:

- Mana
- Whakapapa
- Mauri
- Kaitiakitanga
- Taonga
- Tikanga
- Mahinga kai
- Ahi kā roa
- Wāhi tapu
- Ki uta ki tai

Waikato Regional Council recognises these values and perspectives and how they relate to each tangata whenua group, need to be considered and incorporated as part of resource management policy development and decision making. The National Planning Standards 2019 requires councils to include a chapter in their plans for tangata whenua related content. This chapter provides a location for provisions that detail processes and context relating to tangata whenua.

Coastal areas are significant to Māori both spiritually and as a source of food, and resources for cultural activities such as weaving and carving and as a place for customary rituals and practices.

Coastal resources continue to provide sustenance and identity to coastal Maori. Rare weaving materials, such as pīngao, grow on coastal dunes. Harbours and estuaries are important breeding, nursery and feeding grounds for fish and birds such as pātiki (flounder), matamata (whitebait) and kuaka (godwits). Kaimoana served at marae hākari as kīnaki (a tribal delicacy) performs a key function of marae – to show manaakitanga to guests in reciprocity for the mana their presence and involvement at important hui, tangihanga and other tribal events provides.

As a consequence, Māori often regard the coastal marine area as 'baskets of food' providing kaimoana for the coastal and wider community and as a food source, the coast needs to be treated with respect. For example, it is inappropriate to discharge waste into coastal areas. Resource activity and its adverse effects have reduced the coast's natural values and its ability to provide food in ways that recognise and provide for the relationship of Māori and their culture and traditions with their ancestral lands, water, sites, wāhi tapu, and other taonga, have particular regard to kaitiakitanga, and take into account the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi (Te Tiriti o Waitangi).

The Resource Management Act, New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement 2010, Marine and Coastal Area (Takutai Moana) Act 2011, and the Waikato Regional Policy Statement 2016 give special status to tangata whenua and set out principles and mechanisms through which their interests are provided for. These principles include, but are not limited to:

- the requirements to take account of iwi management plans when developing policy
- the requirements to consult with tangata whenua when developing policy
- the requirement for consent applications to identify and document, within an assessment of environmental effects, tangata whenua interested in or affected by consent proposals, the consultation undertaken, and any response to the views of those consulted
- the requirement to take into account the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi
- recognition of customary interests in the common marine and coastal area.

Tribal areas - Ngā rohe pōtae o ngā tāngata whenua

The natural world provides identity for Māori. Māori people introduce themselves in relation to their tribal boundaries and their tūrangawaewae, with reference to:

- their mountain (maunga)
- the lands adjacent to the mountain (whenua)
- their river and its flow (awa)
- the coastline, or for inland tribes, often a large lake (moana).

Regional Iwi Partners

At the regional scale the description of tangata whenua within the Waikato region begins with the Waikato regional iwi partners group. This group is based on iwi Māori entities which regional council has, or has pending, co-governance or co-management arrangements with that stem from Treaty settlement legislation. It includes entities representing:

- Waikato-Tainui
- Te Arawa iwi
- Raukawa
- Ngāti Maniapoto
- Hauraki iwi
- Ngāti Tūwharetoa.

Iwi Authorities

In addition, the region also includes a wider group of iwi Māori entities representing tangata whenua interests at a local or sub-regional scale. These groups have been identified by the Crown for RMA purposes and further through treaty claims settlement processes undertaken within, or overlapping with, the Waikato region.

Iwi identified within the Waikato region [1]	Treaty settlement iwi [2]	Settlement legislation
Predominantly in region		
Hauraki		
	Pare Hauraki	
	Marutūāhu	
Ngāi Tai ki Tāmaki	Ngāi Tai ki Tāmaki	Ngāi Tai ki Tāmaki Claims Settlement Act 2018
Ngāti Hako	Ngāti Hako	
Ngāti Hei	Ngāti Hei	
Ngāti Maru	Ngāti Maru (Hauraki)	
Ngāti Pāoa	Ngāti Paoa	
Ngāti Porou ki Harataunga ki Mataora	Ngāti Porou ki Harataunga ki Mataora	
Ngāti Pūkenga ki Waiau		Ngāti Pūkenga Claims Settlement Act 2017

[1] as identified on Te Puni Kokiri website
[2] as identified on Te Arawhiti Pathway website

Ngāti Rāhiri Tumutumu	Ngāti Rāhiri Tumutumu	
Ngāti Tamaterā	Ngāti Tamaterā	
Ngāti Tara Tokanui	Ngāti Tara Tokanui	
Ngāti Whanaunga	Ngāti Whanaunga	
Te Patukirikiri	Te Patukirikiri	
Maniapoto		
Maniapoto	Maniapoto Ngāti Maniapoto (Waipa River)	Nga Wai o Maniapoto (Waipa River) Act 2012
Maraeroa A & B (Land Block)	Maraeroa A & B Blocks	Maraeroa A and B Blocks Claims Settlement Act 2012
	Waitomo	
Raukawa		
Raukawa	Raukawa Raukawa (Waikato River)	Raukawa Claims Settlement Act 2014 Ngati Tuwharetoa, Raukawa, and Te Arawa River Iwi Waikato River Act 2010
Matamata		
Ngāti Hinerangi	Ngāti Hinerangi	Ngāti Hinerangi Claims Settlement Act 2021
Tūwharetoa		
Ngāti Tūwharetoa	Ngāti Tūwharetoa Ngāti Tuwharetoa (Waikato River)	Ngāti Tūwharetoa Claims Settlement Act 2018 Ngati Tuwharetoa, Raukawa, and Te Arawa River Iwi Waikato River Act 2010
Ngāti Tūrangitukua	Ngāti Tūrangitukua	Ngāti Tūrangitukua Claims Settlement Act 1999
Pouakani		
Pouākani (Land Block)	Pouakani People	Pouākani Claims Settlement (Resource Management Consent Notification) Regulations 2001 Pouākani Claims Settlement Act 2000
Waikato		
Waikato	Waikato Tainui Raupatu Waikato Tainui (Waikato River) Waikato Tainui remaining claims	Waikato-Tainui Raupatu Claims (Waikato River) Settlement Act 2010 Waikato Raupatu Claims Settlement Act 1995
Ngāti Hauā	Ngāti Hauā	Ngāti Hauā Claims Settlement Act 2014
	Ngāti Koheriki	
Te Ākitai Waiohua	Te Ākitai Waiohua	
Ngāti Korokī Kahukura	Ngāti Koroki Kahukura	Ngāti Koroki Kahukura Claims Settlement Act 2014
	Ngāti Te Ata	
Ngāti Tamaoho	Ngāti Tamaoho	Ngāti Tamaoho Claims Settlement Act 2018

Te Arawa		
	Te Arawa River Iwi (Waikato River)	Ngati Tuwharetoa, Raukawa, and Te Arawa River Iwi Waikato River Act 2010
Ngāti Kea / Ngāti Tuarā		
Ngāti Tahu / Ngāti Whaoa		
	Tūhourangi	
Partly in region		
Te Arawa		
	Te Arawa Lakes	Affiliate Te Arawa Iwi and Hapu Claims Settlement Act 2008
Te Ure o Uenukukōpako / Ngati Whakaue	Ngāti Whakaue	
Ngāti Rangitihi	Ngāti Rangitihi	Ngāti Rangitihi Claims Settlement Act 2022
Ngāti Rangiwewehi	Ngāti Rangiwewehi	
Central North Island		
Ngāti Hineuru	Ngāti Hineuru	Hineuru Claims Settlement Act 2016
Ngāti Kahungunu		
Ngāti Manawa	Ngāti Manawa	Ngāti Manawa Claims Settlement Act 2012
Ngāti Whare	Ngāti Whare	Ngāti Whare Claims Settlement Act 2012
Tūhoe	Ngāi Tūhoe	Tūhoe Claims Settlement Act 2014
Tauranga Moana		
	Tauranga Moana	
Ngāi Te Rangi	Ngāi Te Rangi and Ngā Pōtiki	
Ngāti Pūkenga	Ngāti Pūkenga	
Ngāti Ranginui	Ngāti Ranginui	
Whanganui / Taranaki		
Ngāti Hāua (Upper Whanganui)	Ngāti Hāua	
Whanganui Iwi / Te Atihaunui a Pāpārangi	Whanganui Iwi	
Te Korowai o Wainuiārua (Central Whanganui)	Central Whanganui (Te Korowai o Wainuiārua)	
	Mōkai Pātea Nui Tonu	
Ngāti Tamakōpiri		
Ngāti Tama	Ngāti Tama (Taranaki)	Ngati Tama Claims Settlement Act 2003
Ngāti Rangi	Ngāti Rangi	Ngāti Rangi Claims Settlement Act 2019
Tāmaki Makaurau		
	Tāmaki Makaurau	
	Ngāti Whātua	
Ngāti Manuhiri	Ngāti Manuhiri	
Regional / National		
	Fisheries Settlement	Māori Fisheries Act 2004 Treaty of Waitangi (Fisheries Claims) Settlement Act 1992

		Maori Commercial Aquaculture Claims Settlement (Aquaculture Settlement Register) Regulations 2006 Maori Commercial Aquaculture Claims Settlement Act 2004
	Central North Island Forests	Central North Island Forests Land Collective Settlement Act 2008

Relationships between tangata whenua and Council

The relationships council has with iwi Māori entities occurs at multiple levels and is recognised through a range of instruments, including:

- relationships resulting from the lodgement of iwi planning documents with council
- relationships formed out of the treaty claims settlement process (both pre-settlement and post-settlement)
- relationships as iwi authorities under the RMA
- relationships as tangata whenua and ahi kā roa groups at place throughout the region

Tangata whenua groups can hold multiple relationships at different levels and through multiple instruments. The Treaty claims settlement process often clarifies and further defines these relationships through formalised arrangements for the management of natural resources and clearly defined areas of interest.

Effective engagement with a single tangata whenua group may mean engaging with more than one representative entity.

Treaty Settlement Legislation

Treaty settlement legislation has led the Council to form joint management agreements, co-management arrangements and co-governance relationships with the following iwi:

- Raukawa (through the Raukawa Settlement Trust)
- Ngāti Maniapoto (through the Maniapoto Māori Trust Board, and this joint management agreement is a collective agreement with the Waikato Regional Council, Otorohanga District Council, Waikato District Council, Waipā District Council and Waitomo District Council)
- Te Arawa (through the Te Arawa River Iwi Trust)
- Waikato-Tainui (through the Waikato Raupatu River Trust)
- Ngāti Tūwharetoa (through the Tūwharetoa Māori Trust Board).

Joint management agreements

There are five joint management agreements (JMAs) between iwi and Waikato Regional Council and one co-managed lands agreement with Waikato rohe iwi. These derive from the provisions within the iwi-specific Treaty Settlement legislation. The current JMAs are with the following entities:

- Waikato Raupatu River Trust – Waikato-Tainui (has the sole co-management agreement with council for river related lands)
- Tūwharetoa Māori Trust Board
- Raukawa Settlement Trust
- Crown-iwi co-management of the Waikato River catchment
- Te Arawa River Iwi Trust
- Maniapoto Māori Trust Board (this is a collective agreement with all the relevant local authorities in this rohe).

These JMAs acknowledge the iwi Māori relationship with the environment. Both parties agree to embrace a new era of holistic co-governance and co-management, where iwi involvement in decision making is enabled through the joint sub-committees, and where effective relationships are strengthened through biannual operational and co-governance meetings.

The Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River

As part of the Waikato River Settlement between the Crown and Waikato-Tainui, Te Ture Whaimana o Te Awa o Waikato – the Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River has been developed. This Vision and Strategy was developed by the Guardians Establishment Committee, iwi and communities of the Waikato River catchment and will be periodically reviewed by the Waikato River Authority. 3.5 Iwi planning documents The RMA requires that planning documents recognised by an iwi authority, such as iwi management plans, be taken into account in the preparation of the regional policy statement, to the extent that it has bearing on the resource management issues of the region.

The Waikato River Authority (WRA) was established through the Waikato-Tainui Raupatu Claims (Waikato River) Settlement Act 2010, the Ngāti Tūwharetoa, Raukawa and Te Arawa River Iwi Waikato River Act 2010, and with additional responsibilities arising from the Ngā Wai o Maniapoto (Waipā River) Act 2012.

The WRA is required to set the Vision and Strategy for the Waikato River to achieve the restoration of the health and wellbeing for further generations. The Vision and Strategy, known as Te Ture Whaimana o Te Awa o Waikato, applies to the Waikato River and activities within its catchment affecting the Waikato River. The Vision and Strategy is the primary direction setting document for the river and it forms part of the Waikato Regional Policy Statement. Its status means that it prevails over any inconsistencies in other polices, plans or processes affecting the river.

The Vision and Strategy must be “given effect to” by regional and district plans within the river’s catchments. The WRA’s other functions include promoting an integrated, holistic and coordinated approach to the implementation of the Vision and Strategy and the management of the Waikato River, and to fund rehabilitation initiatives for the river, in its capacity as the trustee of the Waikato River Cleanup Trust.

The 10 member WRA is comprised of five Crown appointed members and five from each river iwi. One Crown member is nominated by Waikato Regional Council, with a second nominated by territorial authorities.

Statutory acknowledgements

A statutory acknowledgement is a means by which the Crown has formally acknowledged the statements made by iwi of their cultural, spiritual, historical and traditional association with a statutory area. Local authorities must attach information recording statutory acknowledgements to all statutory plans that wholly or partly cover the area. The attachment of such information is not

subject to the provisions of Schedule 1 of the RMA. Statutory acknowledgements are listed in Appendix 1 to the operative Waikato Regional Policy Statement.

Ngā pānga takutai moana - Customary rights and interests

When preparing a regional coastal plan a regional council must take into account, if it is lodged with the council, a planning document prepared by a customary marine title group under section 85 of this Act, to the extent that it has bearing on the resource management issues of the region. It must:

- recognise and provide for the matters in that document to the extent that they relate to the relevant customary marine title area; and
- take into account the matters in that document to the extent that they relate to a part of the common marine area outside the customary marine title area of the relevant group.

The Marine and Coastal Area (Takutai Moana) Act 2011 recognises and protects the exercise of customary rights and interests of Māori in the common marine and coastal area – that's any part of the coastal marine area that is not in private ownership or is conservation land, a reserve or national park.
Under this legislation, iwi, hapū or whānau groups may exercise specified rights in relation to a Customary Marine Title (CMT) or Protected Customary Rights (PCR) area. For the coastal plan, this means activities requiring a resource consent or permit, including controlled activities, cannot be undertaken unless permission is granted by the CMT. This is also similar for PCR groups if the effect of the consent activity is more than a minor adverse effect. At present, there are approximately 30 applications being processed by the High Court for CMT in the Waikato region.
Waikato Regional Council recognises that the coastal plan will need to have appropriate mechanisms in place to give effect to both CMT and PCR rights and interests.

Hapū and iwi planning documents

Ngā mahere taiao a ngā iwi - Iwi management plans

An iwi management plan is a document developed and approved by iwi to address matters of resource management activity of significance within their respective rohe (region). The plans can contain information relating to specific cultural values, historical accounts, descriptions of areas of interest (hapū/iwi boundaries) and consultation and engagement protocols for resource consents and plan changes.

Planning documents recognised by an iwi authority provide a mechanism in which iwi interests can be considered in the council processes. There are specific legislative requirements which place a duty on council staff to take these plans into account. In practice, local authorities must balance a number of competing interests, including iwi plans.

Iwi and hapū planning documents lodged with the Waikato Regional Council can be found at the following link - Iwi management plans

The plans that include the CMA have been taken into account by the Council in the preparing the draft Regional Coastal Plan.

Iwi management plans provide a robust view of the aspirations and interests of individual iwi. They contain information relating to specific cultural values, historical accounts, natural resources as well as descriptions of areas of interest such as iwi/hapū boundaries and wāhi tapu (sacred site).

For the coastal plan, iwi management plans have been used to build our understanding of the coastal issues and priorities for iwi in the coastal marine area. The iwi management plans we have drawn information from include:

- Whaia te Mahere Taiao o Hauraki
- Ko tā Maniapoto Mahere Taiao: Environmental Management Plan
- Motakotako Marae Hapu Management Plan
- Ngāti Hikairo Heritage Management Plan
- Ngāti Porou ki Hauraki Plan
- Raukawa Fisheries Plan
- Tai Tumu Tai Pari Tai Ao: Waikato-Tainui Environmental Plan.

Tangata whenua perspectives

This section of the plan sets out tangata whenua views within the Waikato region about the CMA, as background information to the issues arising from Waikato Regional Council's duty to take into account the principles of the Treaty of Waitangi under section 8 of the RMA.

The information below is from the operative Waikato Regional Coastal Plan and does not include the views of all iwi Māori entities.

Waikato Tainui views

The tangata whenua of the Waikato region's coast are predominantly the people of the Tainui waka.

Tainui is the past. Tainui is the present. Tainui is the future. In accordance with Māori Customary Law and as acknowledged in the Declaration of Independence 1839, Tainui is tangata whenua.

This section summarises Waikato Tainui views on coastal management issues for the region's west coast. These views are taken from the report prepared by the Huakina Development Trust which was taken into account in the development of the plan.

Waikato Tainui is committed to cleaning up the environment and considers that a regional coastal plan is fundamental to that process. It also considers that the tangata whenua perspective is integral to, and should be incorporated in, the plan.

Ownership of the west coast fish, harbours and water systems within the region under study is an issue which forms the basis of tangata whenua concerns with respect to planning processes.

The tangata whenua consider that the Treaty of Waitangi recognised and guaranteed their exclusive rights to the fisheries of the region under study. It is also their view that through the Declaration of Independence, the rights, ownership, management and use of the natural resources within the region, which are the subject of the Regional Coastal Plan, had already been clearly established.

Huakina Development Trust state that the mana whenua groups of Waikato Tainui within the region which is the subject of the Regional Coastal Plan are the kaitiaki of the area and the traditional fisheries of Tainui.

The Waikato Tainui position is that they have 'never objected to sharing the waterways or its fisheries and its use for recreation, however, Waikato Tainui do object to the abuse of such a resource.' Waikato Tainui believe that they must fulfil their kaitiaki responsibilities to ensure the preservation and wise use of natural resources.

They believe that when the performance of their duty as Kaitiaki is interfered with, the well-being of their people, both spiritually and physically, is at risk. Their mana is determined not only by their feats, their standing in their community and the ability to cater for visitors, but also by the quality of the taonga they pass to their descendants. Such taonga are the natural resources within the area subject to the Regional Coastal Plan.

The Māori world is a combination of spiritual, cultural and physical balances intricately woven, which acknowledges the significance of where they came from, the sacredness of water and their intimate kin relationship to all entities within the environment. Māori culture does not separate the land from the surrounding elements of air, water, minerals, flora or fauna. The region under study is embodied

in tangata whenua tradition, sacred areas and burial grounds and these things are a constant reminder of Māori historical, cultural and spiritual values.

According to Māori tradition, even water has a mauri. The mauri is the force that ensures within a physical entity such as the sea, harbours, rivers, lakes and estuaries including land, that all species that it accommodates will have continual life. The mauri should not be interrupted or desecrated. However, if it is, whatever it accommodates is at risk.

The tangata whenua believe that disasters or natural phenomena cannot harm the mauri, only that instigated by people, merely by the use of artificial components such as chemicals. The mauri is defenceless against components that are not part of the natural environment. The mauri of waters and the wairua of the tangata whenua have the same origin. Therefore when the mauri is harmed, so too is the spirit of the tangata whenua.

The strong association tangata whenua have with the region, subject to the Regional Coastal Plan, is closely allied to the gathering of food. Kai moana provides for the daily needs of tangata whenua as well as supplying marae for important ceremonial occasions.

The mana of the tangata whenua is based, in part, on an ability to provide kai moana for such events. Kaimoana is considered to be fundamental to the perpetuation of cultural and related social activities. For these reasons water quality and the productivity of the environment within the Regional Coastal Plan is highly valued by the Waikato Tainui people.

Rahui is a traditional belief in the concept of prohibition. It is regularly imposed at specific stages in the life cycle of certain species in order to give them a chance to spawn and regenerate. Rahui is also placed on an area when a drowning occurs and food gathering is not permitted for specified periods usually determined by kaumatua of the area.

Today, legislation also offers taiapure or management of a local fishery by tangata whenua groups. Taiapure gives legal recognition for tangata whenua groups to perform their Kaitiaki obligations through a management committee.

The area covered by the Regional Coastal Plan also has ancestral ties with early Waikato Tainui settlement of the surrounding land, and of areas beyond, for which the region was a regular means of access. Many areas within the region are considered to be wāhi tapu for various historical, cultural and spiritual reasons. For example, Maketu is the landing place of the Tainui waka. 'It is extremely sacred, for it is the resting home of the waka.'

Waikato Regional Council recognises and acknowledges that Waikato Tainui is tangata whenua of most of the Waikato region, and also recognises and acknowledges the historical, environmental, spiritual, cultural and traditional values Waikato Tainui have for the region covered by the coastal plan. The holistic approach to resource management advocated by Waikato Tainui is supported.

Hauraki views

The Hauraki Maori Trust Board brings together iwi with interests in the east coast of the region's coastline, and the Firth of Thames.

Known by Hauraki as 'Te Tara o te Whai' or 'the barb of the stingray', the Coromandel Peninsula extrudes northwards supported by the sheened waters of Tikapa Moana on the west and the tumultuous seascape of Te Tai Tamawahine on the east. It is also referred to as a waka which extends from Moehau in the north to Te Aroha in the south whose ribs are the river which flow from the mountains and empty into the estuaries and harbours below. These ancient traditions serve to

illustrate the importance of the coast to Hauraki and the manner in which they took on personifications of great reverence.

Both sheltered and exposed, the myriad of bays, inlets, harbours, estuaries and precipitous headland pa embrace the extensive coastline keeping an observant watch on the offshore islands and the all pervading seas. This was the domain of atua 'gods' brought into being by the union of Ranginui, Sky Father and Papatūānuku, Earth Mother. The life of Hauraki was much shaped by this environment in both physical and spiritual senses.

In a physical sense, Hauraki resided along the coastline because this is where the food was abundant and where immediate access could be had to the sea. Hauraki were fishers and mariners. Pa, kainga sites, cultivations, and burial grounds dominate the coast as a constant reminder of the Hauraki past, present and future. Hauraki have an intimate knowledge of their coast and the management systems required to ensure its resources are conserved for present and future generations. The coastal treasures not only maintained the coastal food basket, but also ensured Hauraki could carry out their manaakitanga obligations to their guests and their inland relations. Special places were set aside for mahinga mātaitai, the gathering of plants and materials for cultural purposes, ceremonial purposes and wāhi tapu.

Mauri and its maintenance is the key to the Māori world view of the environment and it is no different in Hauraki. The practitioners of the maintenance of mauri are Kaitiaki. Kaitiaki are tangata whenua. The obligation to fulfil this Kaitiaki role is ancestral derived from whakapapa connections to the natural world and beyond. Built into this system is a check and balance component of tikanga. Tikanga insists upon a certain course of action. Mauri was traditionally maintained using tikanga such as karakia, kawa, tapu, rāhui and whakanoa. The Kaitiaki ethos recognises that the spiritual well-being of a resource is essential to its physical well-being. It approaches the environment in a holistic sense where land, air, waters, soils, minerals, seas, energy, plants, animals, birds, rivers, trees, people all interact and affect each other.

Rangatiratanga over their coastal resources, the coastal resources themselves and the ability to perform the Kaitiaki role is an issue that forms the basis of Hauraki concerns with respect to planning processes. These were customary rights reaffirmed to Hauraki by the Treaty of Waitangi. To Hauraki, the Treaty establishes the proper framework in which coastal resources are conserved and nurtured for present and future generations.

Waikato Regional Council recognises and acknowledges that Hauraki is tangata whenua of the west and east coast of the Coromandel Peninsula and recognises and acknowledges that the physical, spiritual, cultural, social and economic well-being of Hauraki is dependent upon the well-being of their coastal resources and upon their ability to perform their Kaitiaki role over the areas covered by the Regional Coastal Plan. The holistic approach to resource management advocated by Hauraki is supported.

Involvement and participation with tangata whenua

Waikato Regional Council will consult the relevant iwi authority on all matters related to tangata whenua values and interests identified in this Plan, and will maintain regular and open communication with iwi and hapū authorities on resource management matters and processes.

Resource consent applicants should also consult early with tangata whenua on any matters where the Plan identifies that cultural values need to be considered.
Users of this Plan should also refer to the Integrated Management and Sites and Areas of Significance to Māori chapters.

PART 2 – MANAGEMENT OF RESOURCES | WĀHANGA 2 – TE WHAKAHAERE

3 IM – Integrated management | Te whakakotahi whāinga

Overview

Integrated management aims to co-ordinate the management of activities that cross administrative boundaries and to recognise the interconnected nature of natural and physical resources. The coastal environment has a diverse ecosystems within a very dynamic environment and management responsibilities are shared by a number of different statutory authorities. In addition, mean high water spring (MHWS) is a dynamic boundary, in that coastal processes, values and uses occur across it and this line is changing in response to climate change and sea level rise.

Taking an integrated management approach aims to maintain the moana in a healthy, productive and resilient condition, while providing for cultural, social and economic values and focuses on:

- Cross-boundary integration: which recognises activities can have effects across the line of MHWS between the marine area and the land; and also that activities can affect many different resources, directly and indirectly, such as seabed, water, air, ecosystems;
- Cross-agency integration: which acknowledges that the management of coastal activities is shared between many parties, including tangata whenua, statutory authorities and community organisations, and involves many different pieces of legislation and planning documents

Cross resource integration: which recognises that some guidance is needed on management approaches that apply to all coastal resources, such as taking a precautionary approach or climate change.

This chapter acknowledges the complexity of managing across different resources, across different tangata whenua and statutory boundaries and across the range of different agencies, organisations and decision-makers involved in coastal management. In addition, a wide range of activities can occur in the coastal marine area, and these can influence the landward coastal environment (and vice versa). The interconnections between resources, uses and values, and the need for collaboration between different authorities is important.

This chapter provides direction for achieving integrated management across coastal resources and processes in the coastal marine area. It is also supported by more detailed objectives and policies threaded through other chapters of this plan, but which also contribute to integrated management.

Cross references to other relevant plan provisions

The integrated management chapter is relevant to all other chapters.

Objectives

IM-O1 Integrated management of resources

Coastal resources and activities are managed in an integrated manner that recognises the inter-relationships between resources and people.

IM-O2 Tangata whenua values

Te Ao Maori, tangata whenua values, mātauranga Māori and tikanga Māori, and the relationships and responsibilities tangata whenua have with coastal resources, are recognised in decision-making.

IM-O3 Mauri and life supporting capacity

The mauri and life-supporting capacity of coastal waters, the foreshore and seabed, and the air above is safeguarded from the adverse effects of use and development.

IM-O4 Climate change

Resource use activities in the coastal marine area, natural coastal processes and inter-tidal indigenous biodiversity are resilient to, and able to adapt to, the potential effects of climate change and sea level rise.

Policies

IM-P1 Ki uta ki tai (Mountains to the Sea)

Recognise the importance of ki uta ki tai through managing the interconnected nature of coastal resources, with particular attention to the effects of activities on water quality, indigenous biodiversity and coastal hazards.

IM-P2 Ecosystem-based management

Apply an ecosystem-based management approach to integrated decision-making by:

1. Assessing the environmental, cultural, social and economic risks, opportunities, benefits and relationships
2. Basing decisions on scientific, cultural and community knowledge
3. Utilising a wide range of tools and methods to achieve the objectives
4. Applying a precautionary approach where information is uncertain or unknown
5. Applying adaptive management, which has regard to levels of risk, innovation, best practice, changing environments and timeframes, and is informed by monitoring
6. Monitoring outcomes that would inform the objectives and the wider state of the environment.

IM-P3 Cross boundary management

Integrate environmental outcomes across agencies, organisations and tangata whenua boundaries by taking account of the impacts of decision-making under this plan on other legislative responsibilities.

IM-P4 Te Tiriti o Waitangi (the Treaty of Waitangi)

Ensure that the principles of Te Tiriti, relevant iwi planning documents, statutory acknowledgements, and joint management agreements or partnership arrangements, are taken into account when making decisions on coastal resources.

IM-P5 Ko te Pataka kai o Tikapa Moana Te Moananui a Toi/ Hauraki Gulf Marine Park

Recognise the importance of Tikapa Moana/Hauraki Gulf and seek to restore and enhance its mauri and values through:

1. Supporting activities that implement kaitiakitanga and guardianship and the restoration and enhancement of mauri of local ecosystems, marine habitats and marine life
2. Ensuring activities support healthy functioning ecosystems that:
    a. contribute to the cultural, social and economic wellbeing of people who live, work and play in Tikapa Moana
    b. replenish and enhance fisheries and the pātaka kai (food basket) for customary, recreational and commercial uses
    c. protect and where appropriate enhance the life-supporting capacity of Tikapa Moana.
3. Enables strategic provision of infrastructure and the economic use of resources, while protecting the ecological and natural character, landscape and biodiversity values of Tikapa Moana.

IM-P6 Statutory responsibilities

Take into account the purpose of any other statutory responsibilities relevant to marine resources, including but not limited to conservation, fisheries and Treaty Settlement legislation, and ensure activities in the coastal marine area are managed to avoid significant adverse effects and to avoid, remedy or mitigate other adverse effects of activities in relation to these statutory purposes.

IM-P7 Tangata whenua relationship with the coast

Recognise and provide for the relationship of tangata whenua with their cultural and spiritual values and traditions with the coastal marine area, including by:

1. Protecting taonga, sites, resources and values of cultural significance, acknowledging that some of these may not be publicly identified;
2. Ensuring tangata whenua have the opportunity in consent decision-making to identify sites and values which have cultural and spiritual significance, and protect these sites from the adverse effects of use and development; and
3. Enabling tangata whenua to undertake customary activities in the coastal marine area, including management of kaimoana, māhinga mataitai and cultural sites of significance.

IM-P8 Kaitiakitanga

Support opportunities for kaitiakitanga to be exercised, and recognise tikanga Māori and mātauranga Māori.

IM-P9 Mātauranga Māori

Recognise the importance of indigenous mātauranga and customary knowledge, in accordance with tikanga Māori, to:

1. Improve and safeguard the coastal environment for future generations
2. Monitor the state of the environment and impacts of activities
3. Enhance resources or degraded areas
4. Contribute to resource consent decision-making.

IM-P10 Cultural impact assessment

Require resource consent applications to provide a cultural impact assessment if one or more of the following apply:

1. Adverse effects on māhinga kai or access to kaimoana beds
2. Adverse effect on wāhi tapu, sites of significance and other taonga identified in Schedule 6, or as otherwise identified by tangata whenua

3. Adverse effects on indigenous biodiversity which would affect tangata whenua carrying out cultural and traditional activities
4. Adverse effects on taiāpure, mahinga mātaitai or Māori non-commercial fisheries
5. Adverse effects on protected customary rights
6. Introduction of new species to the Waikato region.

IM-P11 Requirements of a cultural impact assessment

Require a cultural impact assessment to:

1. Be of a corresponding scale and significance to the effects that activity may have on tangata whenua and their taonga
2. Have regard to:
    a. any relevant planning document recognised by an iwi authority and lodged with Council, that is relevant to the activity
    b. the outcomes of any consultation over the activity
    c. any statutory acknowledgements, the Waikato River Vision and Strategy, and Treaty Settlement legislation
    d. be evidence-based and incorporate where appropriate, mātauranga Māori
    e. identify and describe the cultural resources and activities that may be affected by the activity and the adverse effects that may arise from the activity
    f. identify, where possible, how to avoid, remedy or mitigate the adverse effects on cultural values of the activity that are more than minor
    g. any other relevant information.

IM-P12 Use and development

Recognise that the protection of values in the coastal marine area does not preclude appropriate use and development which provides for the cultural, social and economic wellbeing of communities, and which ensures the resilience of marine ecosystems.

IM-P13 Interconnected nature of the coast

Require any consent applications for use and development to recognise the dynamic, complex and interconnected nature of ecological and physical processes and functions in the coastal environment and the interconnections between marine ecosystems and people, to ensure adverse effects are managed holistically across the coastal environment.

IM-P14 Functional and operational need

1. Recognise use and development that has a functional or operational need to be located in the coastal marine area may be appropriate in some areas
2. Avoid activities that could otherwise be practicably located outside the coastal marine area
3. Avoid, or if avoidance is not possible, mitigate adverse effects from adjacent land uses in the coastal marine area or adverse effects on ecological and physical processes and functions.

IM-P15 Efficient use of space

Promote the efficient use of space in the coastal marine area by:

1. Ensuring space is used effectively
2. Requiring authorised activities to be undertaken without unreasonable delay
3. Requiring use and development in the CMA to be adequately supported by land-based access, services and infrastructure

4. Requiring use and development to avoid, remedy or mitigate the potential for causing reverse sensitivity effects or sprawling or sporadic developments.

IM-P16 Precautionary approach

Adopt a precautionary approach when the effects of an activity are uncertain, unknown, or little understood, but potentially significantly adverse, or where resources are vulnerable to the effects of climate change and sea level rise, by assessing risk associated with the activity and:

1. Declining resource consent for activities where the environmental, cultural, social and economic risks for future generations, are assessed as being significantly adverse; or
2. Limiting the duration of a resource consent term where the environmental, cultural, social and economic risks are assessed as being significant but unknown and acceptable; or
3. Acknowledging that uncertain, unknown and little understood effects can be appropriately addressed through adaptive management; and
4. Ensuring monitoring is focused on environmental objectives to contribute to knowledge of uncertain, unknown and little understood effects.

IM-P17 Adaptive management

Apply adaptive management by:

1. Using evidence-based decision-making that assesses whether the environmental risk and consequences, and the degree of uncertainty can be addressed through consent conditions, in a way that reduces risk and uncertainty
2. Requiring monitoring to address:
    a. baseline information on the effects of the activity (or multiple activities) on the receiving environment, or
    b. effects that are unknown but where the risk of the activity proceeding is considered to be acceptable.
3. Setting thresholds or boundaries and adaptation actions or decisions to be taken, if potential adverse effects arise
4. Specifying the circumstances when a review of consent conditions will be undertaken, including to ensure best management practices are undertaken;
5. Enabling biodiversity and activities affected by climate change, including marine acidification, to be remedied, restored or relocated; and
6. Ensuring the outcomes from adaptive management consent conditions are used to inform environmental change and future management practice.

IM-P18 Climate change – resilience and adaptation

Manage the potential effects of climate change on existing and proposed use and development in the coastal marine area by:

1. Taking into account any activity included in any emissions reduction plan made in accordance with section 5ZI of the Climate Change Response Act 2002, or in any national adaptation plan made in accordance with section 5ZS of the Climate Change Response Act 2002
2. Ensuring activities adopt the most recent national guidance on climate change projections, in assessing risk and in designing scale, resilience, design-life and future adaptations of the activity
3. Ensuring activities assess and manage the potential impact their activity may have, as a result of climate change effects, on high value areas or on ecological and physical processes and functions in the coastal environment

4. Recognising that some activities will need to adapt to the potential effects of climate change including marine acidification and sea level rise.

IM-P19 Cumulative effects

Avoid significant cumulative adverse effects from activities and avoid, remedy or mitigate other cumulative adverse effects, by:

1. Assessing cumulative effects based on a geographic area of an appropriate scale relative to the proposed activity
2. Assessing the direct, indirect and consequential impacts of the proposed activity on existing uses, and on ecological, cultural, social and economic values and pressures, now and in the reasonably foreseeable future
3. Ensuring the proposed activity does not exacerbate an existing environmental issue or threshold.

IM-P20 Bonds

Require a reasonable assurance, or in the absence of a reasonable assurance a bond, for activities where it is deemed necessary relative to risk, to cover potential costs associated with:

1. The removal of abandoned or derelict structures
2. Any potential biosecurity risks or incursions of marine pests
3. The restoration or reinstatement of the environment
4. Any emergency repairs or rescue undertaken by the Regional Council on behalf of the consent holder in the event of any part of a structure breaking loose or causing a potential navigational hazard.

Advisory note:

1. *Examples of reasonable assurance include the establishment of a fidelity fund or a form of insurance.*

4 AIR – Discharges to air | Ngā rukenga ki te rangi

Overview

This chapter contains provisions that protect ambient air quality in the coastal marine area.

Discharges to air can include odour, products of combustion, agrichemical spray drift, particulate matter, solvents, nitrogen oxides, and other gases. They can be complex in nature and have the potential to cause adverse effects on ambient air quality and human health. Certain discharges must be assessed individually and regulated appropriately.

Discharges to air in the CMA from ships and offshore installations and other activities do not generally have adverse effects, other than cumulatively in their contribution to greenhouse gas emissions in the atmosphere. Under regulation 16 of the Resource Management (Marine Pollution) Regulations 1998, the regional coastal plan cannot regulate discharges from the normal operations of ships caused by ship propulsion or incineration of waste.

The discharge of particulate matter, open burning, odour, activities on structures (e.g. abrasive blasting), and the potential release of toxic substances into the environment can impact human health, indigenous biodiversity, and natural character values in the CMA.

Discharges to air from land-based activities may result in adverse effects being noticed in the CMA.

Cross references to other relevant plan provisions

Other chapters contain provisions for activities that may be subject to natural hazards, these include:

- **Biosecurity BIO** – where hull cleaning and the application of agrichemicals to manage marine pests may be necessary.
- **Deposition and Disturbance DD** – in relation to effects of temporary activities which may result in a discharge to air.
- **Energy and Infrastructure EI** – in relation to energy generation activities and regionally significant infrastructure
- **Sites and Areas of Significance to Māori SASM** – in relation areas of significance to tangata whenua being impacted by smells and odours.
- **Structures STR** – in relation to infrastructure which may require a discharge to air.

Objectives

AIR-O1 Protection of air quality

Air quality in the coastal marine area is protected where it is high, enhanced where degraded and otherwise maintained.

AIR-O2 Air quality poses no risk to human health and ecosystems

Air quality in the coastal marine area has high amenity posing no unacceptable risks to the mauri of air, human health or ecosystems.

Policies

AIR-P1 Managing the effects of discharges on ambient air quality

Manage the effects, including cumulative effect, of discharges on ambient air quality to ensure activities in the coastal marine area do not:

1. produce objectionable or offensive effects from the discharge of odour or dust
2. cause hazardous, dangerous or toxic on human or ecosystem health
3. suspended or deposited particulate matter that is objectionable does not cause an adverse effect
4. have a significant adverse effect on visibility
5. cause accelerated corrosion of structures, or
6. cause significant adverse effects on the relationship tangata whenua as kaitiaki have with their identified taonga such as air, ancestral lands, water and wāhi tapu.

AIR-P2 Benefits to people and communities from activities that may affect air quality

Recognise the positive benefits to people and communities arising from activities that affect air quality by enabling a range of activities whilst ensuring that:

1. high quality air resources are protected,
2. degraded air quality is enhanced,
3. adverse effects on air quality are avoided, remedied or mitigated.

Rules

Permitted Activities

AIR-R1 Permitted discharges to air in the coastal marine area

	Activity status: PER The discharge of contaminants to air, in the coastal marine area, provided it does not result in any of the following: 1. odour that is objectionable to the extent that it causes an adverse effect 2. adverse effects on human health, the health of flora and fauna 3. objectionable effects of particulate matter 4. significant visibility impairment 5. accelerated corrosion or accelerated deterioration to structures.	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **DIS**

Discretionary Activities

AIR-R2 Discharge of contaminants to air in the coastal marine area

	Activity status: DIS The discharge of contaminants into air and any subsequent discharge of contaminants into the coastal marine area, including:	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **N/A**

	1. Dry abrasive blasting 2. Application of agrichemicals not otherwise provided for in the Biosecurity chapter rules of this Plan 3. Hull cleaning not otherwise provided for in the Biosecurity chapter rules of this Plan 4. Coating processes 5. Processing, storage, transfer and flaring of hydrocarbons and biogas.	

[*Some rules still to be developed including agrichemical spraying*]

Material to be incorporated by reference

1. New Zealand Standard 8409:2004 Management of Agrichemicals.
2. Ministry for the Environment Ambient Air Quality Guidelines 2002.

5 AQA – Aquaculture | Ngā rukenga ki te rangi

Overview

Aquaculture (or marine farming) is the breeding and growing of fish, aquatic life or seaweed in the coastal marine area. It generally involves occupation of space, structures, discharges and deposition on, and disturbance to, the foreshore and seabed, and requires high water quality.

The plan provides for commercial aquaculture to be established in appropriate locations in a sustainable manner. While aquaculture is important to the region and has economic benefits, it may also impact on aspects of the coastal marine area valued by the community, such as public access, recreational use, cultural, natural character and amenity values.

New commercial aquaculture is enabled in aquaculture management areas on the Western Coromandel Peninsula, while being generally inappropriate in identified high value areas, some harbours and estuaries and the eastern side of the Coromandel Peninsula.

Aside from existing marine farms, new subtidal commercial aquaculture activities are provided for within the following aquaculture management areas:

- Wilson Bay (Areas A, B and C) – *existing*
- Coromandel Marine Farming Area – *existing*
- Western Coromandel Aquaculture Management Area – *new*
- Colville Aquaculture Management Area – *new*

In addition, new aquaculture management areas may be created directly by Government in response to treaty settlements under the Māori Commercial Aquaculture Settlement Act 2004.
Marine farming can be affected by land uses above MHWS which can have an adverse effect on coastal water quality and influence the ability of an area to sustain marine farming activities.
The Resource Management (National Environmental Standards for Marine Aquaculture) Regulations 2020 (NES-MA) came into force on 1 December 2020. If an activity provided for in this chapter, including any associated matters of discretion, is regulated by the NES-MA then the NES-MA applies and prevails over the rules. If the NES-MA regulations do not apply to an activity, then the plan rules apply.

Cross references to other relevant provisions

Other chapters may also be relevant to aquaculture, including:

- **Biosecurity BIO** – in relation to hull cleaning and minimising the introduction and spread of marine pests and harmful aquatic organisms.
- **Disturbances and Deposition DD** – which includes additional provisions relating to the disturbance and deposition of the seabed and foreshore.
- **Ecosystems and indigenous biodiversity ECO** – which contains objectives, policies and rules relating to the protection and maintenance of indigenous biological diversity, including marine mammals. It also spatially identifies significant indigenous biodiversity sites in the region.
- **Structures STR** – which contains additional provisions for maintaining, repairing, replacing or removing existing marine farm structures.

- **Water Quality WQ and Discharges DIS** – includes additional provisions relating to maintaining and improving coastal water quality and discharges to the coastal marine area.

Objectives

AQA-O1 Aquaculture in appropriate locations

Sustainable development of aquaculture is provided for in appropriate locations.

AQA-O2 Water quality fit for aquaculture

Use and development within the coastal environment maintains high water quality fit for aquaculture in and around approved for aquaculture activities.

AQA-O3 Tangata whenua aspirations for sustainable aquaculture

Tangata whenua aspirations for aquaculture activities are provided for in accordance with tikanga Māori.

AQA-O4 Enable existing aquaculture

Existing aquaculture activities are enabled.

Policies

General

AQA-P1 Benefits of aquaculture to communities

Recognise the benefits existing and new aquaculture activities can provide to local communities, Māori and the region, by taking the following potential benefits into account when considering aquaculture activities:

1. Local employment opportunities
2. Opportunities for enhancing Māori development, particularly in areas where alternative opportunities are limited
3. Research and training opportunities – which would grow the community's knowledge base and up skill the labour force
4. Providing improved information about the region's coastal marine area, including water quality and marine biological processes
5. Opportunities to supplement or complement natural fish, shellfish or seaweed stocks, and
6. The contribution to primary and secondary industries and the overall regional and national economy.

AQA-P2 Consideration of effect in aquaculture management areas

Ensure the following in considering new marine farms within an aquaculture management area:

1. The avoidance of adverse effects on the attributes and values of high value areas described in Policy AQQ-P9
2. The avoidance of significant adverse effects, and avoidance, remediation and mitigation of other adverse effects on:
   a. navigation safety and recreational use of the coastal marine area

b. the operation of existing marine farms
c. Māori cultural values
d. marine mammals
e. marine reserves
f. surf breaks and swell corridors
g. areas used for commercial, recreational and customary fishing.

3. Any other matters set out in Policy AQA-P3.

AQA-P3 Consideration of aquaculture activities

Ensure the following matters are considered when making decisions on any application for aquaculture activities:

1. The suitability of the location for the proposed type of aquaculture and species to be farmed, including consideration of the cumulative effects of other aquaculture in the area
2. The sensitivity of the receiving environment, including existing water quality
3. The potential adverse effects of the proposed aquaculture activities on natural, social, cultural, heritage and economic values, including biosecurity risks
4. The potential social, cultural and economic benefits of the proposed aquaculture activities
5. The productivity and functioning of other marine farms
6. Navigation and safety issues
7. The provision of appropriate site access, and the potential effects associated with any off-site structures, facilities or activities forming part of the proposal
8. Potential conflict with existing uses and values of the coastal marine area, including identified surf breaks and swell corridors, shipping routes and recreational activities

AQA-P4 Precautionary approach for new species, farming methods or locations

Take a precautionary approach for the introduction of new species, farming methods or locations, where the risk of adverse effects are uncertain, unknown or little understood but potentially significant. Adaptive management is one method of accomplishing this.

AQA-P5 Marae-based aquaculture

Enable tangata whenua to undertake marae-based aquaculture in accordance with tikanga Māori.

AQA-P6 Public recreational use within aquaculture areas

Enable public recreational use within an aquaculture management area or marine farm, except where access restrictions are necessary to:

1. Protect public health and safety; or
2. Protect the operational health and safety of farm vessels and operators; or
3. Ensure a level of security consistent with the purpose of a resource consent.

New aquaculture

AQA-P7 New commercial aquaculture within aquaculture management areas

Provide for new commercial aquaculture within aquaculture management areas, that do not involve fed aquaculture, and take into account the suitability for new *aquaculture activities* within possible aquaculture areas identified in Seachange – Tai Timu Tai Pari (Hauraki Gulf Marine Spatial Plan, Appendix 2).

AQA-P8 New commercial aquaculture inappropriate in high value areas

New *commercial aquaculture* is inappropriate in the following *high value areas* of the CMA in which adverse effects are to be avoided on the attributes and values of these areas:

1. Sites or Areas of Significance to Māori (as identified in Schedule 6)
2. Significant Indigenous Biological Diversity Area A sites which meet the criteria in Policy 11(a) of the NZCPS 2010 (as identified in Schedule 7)
3. Areas of Outstanding Natural Character which meet the criteria in Policy 13 of the NZCPS 2010 (as identified in Schedule 4)
4. Significant Seascapes, being areas of Outstanding Natural Features and Natural Landscapes, which meet the criteria in Policy 15 of the NZCPS 2010 (as identified in Schedule 3)
5. Any gazetted marine mammal sanctuary or marine reserve
6. Nationally significant surfbreaks contained in Schedule 1 to the NZCPS 2010, being Manu Bay, Whale Bay, Indicators (Raglan) and Whangamata Bar (Coromandel)
7. Within 5.5 kms (three nautical miles) of identified commercial shipping lanes, or navigable river mouths, and
8. In any mooring area shown in the maps to this Plan.

Advisory note:

1. *New commercial aquaculture may be appropriate in other areas depending on the scale and nature of the activity and effects on the environmental and cultural values that may be present.*

AQA-P9 Non-commercial aquaculture

Non-commercial aquaculture that provides significant environmental, social, cultural or educational benefits may be appropriate in areas of the coastal marine area that are described in Policy AQA-P8.

AQA-P10 Provide for trial and research aquaculture activities

Provide for trial and research aquaculture activities in appropriate locations for a limited duration and scale.

AQA-P11 Coromandel Marine Farming Area

Provide for fed aquaculture as the primary marine farm use in the Coromandel Marine Farming (Fin Fish) Area to enable fin fish farming. Other aquaculture activities may occur as secondary uses provided those activities are compatible with the primary use and within the overall size limits on amount of farm used for secondary use.

AQA-P12 New aquaculture activities to be developed in a staged manner

Require new aquaculture activities to be developed in a staged manner, where:

1. The potential adverse effects cannot be adequately predicted and are potentially significant
2. New species are being introduced and any adverse effects may not be known and are potentially significant
3. New technology is being proposed and the adverse effects from such technology have not been recorded and are potentially significant, or
4. The sensitivity of the receiving environment to aquaculture activities warrants a precautionary approach.

A staged approach will require:

1. A baseline environmental survey

2. A Development Plan showing the stages appropriate to the scale of the aquaculture activity being applied for
3. A staged Environmental Effects Monitoring Programme including environmental limits and triggers against which to assess environmental change to determine the rate of progression of further stages of the aquaculture development, and
4. Identification of actions that will be undertaken to avoid, remedy or mitigate effects that exceed the triggers or environment limits set by way of consent conditions or within the Environmental Effects Monitoring Programme.

Existing aquaculture and operations

AQA-P13 Reconsenting of existing marine farms

Provide for the reconsenting of existing *marine farms* where:

1. The effects of the activity on the values and attributes are of the same, or similar, scale
2. Safe recreation and maritime navigation is not compromised
3. There is an existing substantial level of economic investment
4. Best practices are implemented to avoid or minimise adverse effects on biogenic habitats, reefs and threatened marine species.

AQA-P14 Extensions to authorised marine farms

Provide for limited extensions of authorised marine farms where:

1. The requested extension is no more than a 10% increase in the size of the existing farm
2. The requested extension is outside any *high value areas* identified in Policy AQA-P8 and adverse effects on the characteristics and attributes of high value areas are not increased
3. best practices are implemented to avoid or minimise adverse effects on biogenic habitats, reefs and threatened marine species
4. significant adverse effects are avoided, and other adverse effects, including cumulative effects, are avoided, remedied or mitigated on natural character, natural landscapes and features, indigenous biodiversity and amenity values
5. The requested extension is offshore of the existing farm, does not extend into navigation channels, or into existing accessway channels when farms are co-located in a management areas, and access to the shoreline from the coastal marine area is maintained
6. navigational safety, recreational and amenity values are maintained
7. it is not in a Site or Area of Significance to Māori (as identified in Schedule 8)
8. the existing marine farm is fully developed.

AQA-P15 Water quality of other uses and activities on existing marine farms

Ensure that existing marine farms are not compromised by other uses or by activities that degrade water quality within the coastal environment.

AQA-P16 Introduction or spread of harmful aquatic organisms

Require that structures, vessels and equipment used for aquaculture, including the introduction or relocation of stock, are managed to minimise the risk of introduction or spread of harmful aquatic organisms.

Allocation of space

AQA-P17 Diversification of aquaculture activities

Enable the diversification of aquaculture activities and the use of multi-trophic aquaculture farming systems where:

1. The life-supporting capacity of the environment is safeguarded, including consideration of the matters in Policy AQA-P3
2. The activity is compatible with and does not adversely affect other authorised marine farms and aquaculture activities
3. The genetic effects on wild populations, and the biosecurity effects arising from the farming of new species, are considered acceptable
4. It makes more efficient use of coastal space and/or adopts best practice and farming methods
5. The new aquaculture activities are responding to the effects of climate change.

AQA-P18 Allocation of space in aquaculture management areas

Allocate unconsented space in aquaculture management areas, through a coastal tendering method in accordance with the RMA.

Advisory note:

1. *This policy will also apply when a coastal permit has lapsed, or when a coastal permit has expired and no application has been lodged to replace it.*

AQA-P19 Allocation of space in the Western Coromandel Aquaculture Management Area

Allocate space to apply for aquaculture activities within the Western Coromandel Aquaculture Management Area by way of settlement assets and an appropriate tender process using criteria that includes, but is not limited to, the following:

1. The extent to which the tender proposal achieves the purpose of the Western Coromandel Aquaculture Management Area consistent with Policy AQA-P19
2. Promotion of the sustainable management of natural resources
3. Contribution to the economic and social wellbeing of the region and country
4. Environmental management practices of the applicant
5. The level of monetary contribution.

Advisory note:

1. *Authorisations are not transferable unless the authorisation is a treaty settlement asset under the Māori Commercial Aquaculture Settlement Act 2004.*

Information requirements and monitoring

AQA-P20 Management plan for aquaculture applications

Ensure that all applications for aquaculture activities contain a draft management plan that includes, but is not limited to, the following:

1. A navigation lighting plan and maintenance programme, with approval in principle from the Harbourmaster
2. A marine mammal and seabird interaction management and monitoring plan
3. A biosecurity management and monitoring plan, which includes how the operation of the farm will address farmed stock disease.

AQA-P21 Environmental Monitoring Plan for aquaculture activities

Require applications to include an Environmental Monitoring Plan (EMOP) that addresses, as a minimum, the following potential effects and risks, and gives consideration to the matters listed in AQA-P22 and any relevant guidelines identified by Council:

1. Effects on the benthic environment
2. Effects on water quality
3. Effects from changes in hydrodynamic conditions
4. Effects on marine mammals
5. Effects on seabirds
6. Effects on wild fish
7. Effects of genetic interactions with wild populations
8. Biosecurity risks, pests, and disease
9. Contribution to cumulative effects

Advisory note:

1. *Regional Council is responsible for regional cumulative effects monitoring as part of state of the environment reporting. Information gathered through marine farm monitoring may be used to inform regional cumulative effects monitoring. Resource consents may stipulate specific data formats to enable a collation of monitoring data for this purpose.*

AQA-P22 Matters to consider for Environmental Monitoring Plan for aquaculture activities

Consider the following matters when preparing an Environmental Monitoring Plan (EMOP) for aquaculture activities:

1. Monitoring is to be proportionate to the nature and intensity of the predicted effects of the marine farm
2. Monitoring is to be proportionate to the nature and sensitivity of the receiving environment
3. Monitoring is to reflect the current level of scientific knowledge and certainty on the predicted effects of the marine farm activity
4. Monitoring must consider the objectives and policies of the Regional Coastal Plan and other regulatory documents
5. Not all effects listed in Policy AQA-P23 may be applicable to each marine farm
6. Effects other than those listed in Policy AQA-P23 may be applicable to some marine farms.

Advisory note:

1. *Proportionality is a key concept for the determination of monitoring requirements. 'Being proportionate' means that the matters listed may require a 'greater than typical' or 'lower than typical' monitoring effort.*

AQA-Rule List

Rule	Description	Rest of CMA	Aquaculture Management Areas		
			Wilson Bay Areas	Colville and Western Coromandel Aquaculture Management Area	Coromandel Marine Farming Area
AQA-RX	Aquaculture Research – Existing Species	C	C	C	C
AQA-R1	Spat catching	C	C	C	C
AQA-R2	Aquaculture activities within Wilson Bay Areas A and B (conventional longline)	N/A	C	N/A	N/A
AQA-R3	New inter-tidal oyster farm structures (not in high value areas)	D	N/A	N/A	N/A
AQA-R4	Extension of existing aquaculture activities	D	N/A	N/A	N/A
AQA-R5 AQA-R6	Discharge of Feed, Medicines and Therapeutic Compounds	D	D	RDA	RDA
AQA-R7A	Marine farm structures within Coromandel Marine Farming Area	N/A	N/A	N/A	D
AQA-R7B	Marine farm structures outside the Coromandel Marine Farming Area	N/A	N/A	N/A	D
AQA-R8	New Aquaculture activities within Wilson Bay Areas A and B (excluding conventional longline)	N/A	D	N/A	N/A
AQA-R9	Aquaculture activities within Wilson Bay Area C	N/A	D	N/A	N/A
AQA-R10	Aquaculture activities within Colville and Western Coromandel Aquaculture Management Areas	N/A	N/A	D	N/A
AQA-R11	Reconsenting of existing marine farms located in inappropriate areas	NC	N/A	N/A	N/A
AQA-RXX	Marine farms outside of development areas and Seachange sites	NC	N/A	N/A	N/A
AQ-R12	New commercial aquaculture in high value areas	PR	N/A	N/A	N/A
AQA-R13	Non-complying marine farming structures	PR	PR	PR	PR
AQA-R14	Non-complying discharges of feed, medicines and therapeutic compounds associated with marine farming	PR	PR	PR	PR

Rules

Advisory note:

1. *The rules in the Structures chapter (STR) do not apply to aquaculture activities, with the exception of Rule STR-R7 Maintenance and repair of any existing lawful structure and Rule STR-R8 Removal or demolition of any structure (not involving the use of explosives), which are both permitted activities.*

Aquaculture activities in CMA – General Rules

Permitted Activities

There are no permitted activities for this chapter.

Advisory note:

1. *Under section 68A RMA, no rule may be included in a regional coastal plan which authorises as a permitted activity any aquaculture activity in the coastal marine area.*

Controlled Activities

AQA-RX Aquaculture Research

	Activity status: CON Aquaculture activities undertaken as scientific experiments or trials to research or investigate one or more of the following: 1. The suitability of an area for aquaculture activities 2. Species of fish, aquatic life, or seaweed 3. Aquaculture structures 4. Aquaculture techniques. Where: 1. The area is no more than two hectares 2. The activity is not located within an area of Outstanding Natural Character (as identified in Schedule 3), a Site or Area of Significance to Māori (as identified in Schedule 4) or an Indigenous Biological Diversity Area A (as identified in Schedule 5) 3. The activity is not located in a mooring area shown in the maps to this plan 4. The activity is limited to a maximum duration of no more than 5 years 5. The activity does not require the placement of structures in permanently navigable harbour waters 6. The activity will use species that are indigenous to New Zealand or farmed within the region 7. The species to be used in the activity are not listed as a pest in the Regional Pest Management Plan or as an unwanted organism under the Biosecurity Act 1993.	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **DIS**

	Matters of control are restricted to: 1. Measures to avoid, remedy or mitigate the adverse effects of the activity on: a. indigenous biodiversity values including marine mammals and seabirds b. areas of very high and high natural character c. tangata whenua cultural values d. recreational use and enjoyment e. historic heritage values. 2. Area of the coastal marine area occupied by the activity 3. Cumulative effects arising from other aquaculture activities 4. The total area being utilised for aquaculture research in the region 5. Use of underwater lighting 6. Antifoulant management on structures – for example the use of antifoulants, cleaning methods and associated discharges 7. Navigation and safety requirements 8. Duration of the activity 9. Requirements to remove all structures, organisms and other items from the research area at the completion of the project 10. Use of feed or hormone additives in the coastal marine area 11. Monitoring and reporting requirements 12. Effects on adjacent land owners or occupiers 13. Management of biosecurity risks.	

Discretionary Activities

AQA-R1 Spat catching

	Activity status: DIS The erection, placement, use of, or occupation of space by structures, ropes, buoys and lines for spat collection purposes. <u>*Advisory notes:*</u> 1. *The maintenance, repair, replacement and removal of structures are controlled under the Structures chapter of the plan.* 2. *Rule AQA-R1 does not apply to longline spat catching structures located within the Wilson Bay Marine Farming Areas, which are controlled activities.*	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **NC**

AQA-R3 New inter-tidal oyster farm structures

	Activity status: DIS The erection, placement, use of, or occupation of space by any oyster farming structure in the CMA, excluding the SIB-A area of the Firth of Thames RAMSAR site, for the purpose of oyster farming. <u>Where:</u> 1. The area applied for is not a *high value area* described in Policy AQA-P9 2. All structures must be at least 200 metres from any jetties, boat ramps and other points of regular public use, including ski-lanes.	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **NC**

	3. An accessway of at least 10 metres shall be maintained between each 2 hectare block of an oyster farm, if the farmed area exceeds this size. 4. No artificial foods or antibiotics shall be added to the water. 5. The structure shall not be located in any area identified by the tangata whenua as wāhi tapu.	

AQA-R4 Extension of existing aquaculture activities

	Activity status: DIS The erection, placement, use of, and occupation of space associated with the extension of any marine farming structure and/or area of the CMA occupied by a marine farm (excluding conventional inter-tidal oyster farming rack structures), and any associated discharges to water and air (excluding the discharge of feed and medicinal or therapeutic compounds), and disturbance of and deposition on seabed, for the purpose of marine farming. <u>Where:</u> 1. The extension shall not be into any *high value area* described in Policy AQA-P9. 2. The marine farming structure is not located in a Wilson Bay Marine Farming Area or the Coromandel Marine Farming Area. 3. The extension is proposed to be undertaken by the consent holder for the marine farm that is proposed to be extended. 4. The extension adds no more than 10 percent to the authorised area of the marine farm that is proposed to be extended, whichever is the greater. 5. All components of the structure and the vessels and equipment used for placement shall be free of harmful aquatic organisms at the time of placement. 6. The marine farm has not been granted consent to extend in the previous five years. 7. Either: a. The area subject to application is not a previous extension of a marine farm, or b. If the area is a previous extension, a period of 5 years has elapsed since the consent for the extension was first granted. 8. The extension is contiguous with the marine farm that is proposed to be extended. 9. A separation distance of at least 50 metres is maintained between the extension and any other marine farm, and of at least 50 metres between the extension and mean low water.	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **NC**

AQA-R10 Aquaculture activities within Colville and Western Coromandel Aquaculture Management Areas

	Activity status: DIS Any aquaculture activity, including the development of any commercial aquaculture activity within the Colville and Western Coromandel Aquaculture Management Areas.	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **N/A**

	Where: 1. The applicant has been issued with an allocation right through tendering over that space by Waikato Regional Council.	

Non-complying Activities

AQA-R11 Reconsenting of existing marine farms in inappropriate areas

	Activity Status: NC The re-consenting of an existing marine farm that is located within an inappropriate area for existing aquaculture activities as identified in Policy AQA-P8.	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **N/A**

AQA-RXX Marine farms outside of development areas

	Activity Status: NC The development of any commercial aquaculture activity outside of aquaculture management areas or possible aquaculture areas identified in Seachange – Tai Timu Tai Pari (Hauraki Gulf Marine Spatial Plan, Appendix 2).	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **N/A**

Prohibited Activities

AQA-R12 New commercial aquaculture in high value areas

	Activity Status: PR New commercial aquaculture activities within any *high value area* listed in Policy AQA-P2 that involve any of the following: 1. Erection, reconstruction, placement, alteration, or extension of a structure that is fixed in, on, under or over the foreshore or seabed 2. Disturbance of the foreshore or seabed associated with the structure 3. Occupation of space in the common marine and coastal area 4. Discharge of contaminants to the coastal marine area 5. Deposition of material within the coastal marine area.

AQA-R13 Non-complying marine farming structures

	Activity Status: PR The erection, placement, use of, or occupation of space by any marine farming structure that does not comply with the requirements of Rules AQA-R5 and R6.

AQA-R14 Non-complying discharges of feed, medicines and therapeutic compounds associated with marine farming

	Activity Status: PR The discharge of any feed, medicine or therapeutic compound into the CMA associated with marine farming activities that does not comply with the standards and terms for an activity in Rules AQA-R5 and R6.

Aquaculture activities within Wilson Bay Areas

Controlled Activities

AQA-R2 Aquaculture activities within Wilson Bay Areas A and B

	Activity status: CON The erection, placement, use of, or occupation of space by any conventional longline marine farming structure and associated discharges to water and air, and disturbance of and deposition on seabed, in Wilson Bay Areas A and B, for the purpose of marine farming. Where: 1. Each marine farm shall be a maximum size of 12.5 hectares. There shall be an accessway of 75 metres between each adjacent marine farm. 2. No artificial foods or antibiotics shall be added to the water. 3. The owner of the structure shall provide a legally enforceable bond in favour of and to the satisfaction of Waikato Regional Council in respect of the likely costs of the removal of the structure in the event of default by the owner. 4. Within the Wilson Bay Marine Farming Areas, the cumulative number of farmed hectares in Area 'A' shall not exceed 470 hectares; and in Area 'B' the cumulative number of farmed hectares shall not exceed 520 hectares. 5. No marine farm structure shall be located in the accessway between Areas 'A' and 'B' of the Wilson Bay Marine Farming Areas. **Matters of control are restricted to:** 1. Monitoring and information requirements 2. Duration of the coastal permit, including commencement and completion 3. Landing, loading and unloading locations 4. Benthic effects including, but not limited to, shell hash mounds and horse mussel beds 5. The location and layout of farm blocks including longline density 6. Navigational safety management 7. Management of biosecurity 8. Management of effects on marine mammals and seabirds 9. Waste management 10. Structural integrity 11. Consent condition review 12. Best practice management 13. Noise 14. Removal of unused structures 15. Bond.	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **DIS**

Discretionary Activities

AQA-R8 Other Marine Farm Structures in Wilson Bay Areas A and B

	Activity status: DIS The erection, placement, use of, or occupation of space by any marine farming structure (excluding conventional longlines) and associated discharges to water and air, and disturbance of and deposition on the seabed, in Area A or Area B of the Wilson Bay Marine Farming Areas, for aquaculture activities, provided no fed aquaculture is to occur, and no medicinal compounds are added to the water.	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **NC**

AQA-R9 Aquaculture activities in Wilson Bay Zone Area C

	Activity status: DIS The erection, placement, use of, or occupation of space by any marine farming structure and associated discharges to water and air (excluding the discharge of feed and medicinal or therapeutic compounds), and disturbance of and deposition on the seabed, in Area C of the Wilson Bay Marine Farming Areas, for the purpose of aquaculture activities. <u>Where:</u> 1. The consent applicant holds an authorisation to apply for a coastal permit to occupy space within Area C of the Wilson Bay Marine Farming Areas, issued by the Waikato Regional Council. **Additional Assessment Criteria:** In assessing any application, regard shall also be had to: 1. the potential for genetic effects on the wild population resulting from escapees and/or interbreeding 2. biosecurity, including the potential for parasites and/or diseases to be introduced and their potential transmission between farmed stock and wild populations 3. the adequacy of any development plan, including proposals for staged development.	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **PR**

AQA-R5 Discharge of Feed, Medicines and Therapeutic Compounds Associated with Marine Farming in Area C of Wilson Bay Marine Farming Areas

	Activity status: DIS The discharge of any feed, medicine or therapeutic compound into the CMA associated with marine farming activities in Area C of the Wilson Bay Marine Farming Areas. <u>Where:</u> 1. The total net discharge of nitrogen authorised by all consents (including any current application if granted) shall not exceed 300 tonnes per year. 2. The consent applicant holds an authorisation to apply for a coastal permit to occupy space within Area C of the Wilson Bay Marine Farming Areas, issued by the Waikato Regional Council pursuant to Policy AQA-P20.	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **NC**

	3. Fed aquaculture shall only be located at sites where there is a minimum water depth of 20 metres (relative to chart datum) at all parts of the site. 4. A baseline survey and proposed monitoring programme is submitted at the time of application for resource consent that addresses the matters set out in Policy AQA-P22. **Assessment Criteria:** In assessing any application, regard shall be had to: 1. the flushing characteristics of the site (including water depth, residual currents and clearance between the structures and the seafloor) 2. the extent to which the discharge (either by itself or in combination with other discharges) will or is likely to result in any adverse effects (including bio-accumulative effects) on flora, fauna, kaimoana or on any other marine farms 3. the adequacy of the proposed environmental monitoring programme, and 4. the adequacy of any development plan including proposals for staged development.	

Aquaculture activities within the Coromandel Marine Farming Area

Restricted Discretionary Activities

AQA-R6 **Discharge of feed, medicines and therapeutic compounds associated with marine farming within Coromandel Marine Farming Area**

	Activity Status: RDA The discharge of any feed, medicine or therapeutic compound into the coastal marine area associated with marine farming activities located within the Coromandel Marine Farming Area, and any associated deposition of fish waste. <u>Where:</u> 1. resource consent is held (or applied for) enabling aquaculture activities for the same marine farming site. 2. The amount of net nitrogen and feed discharge authorised by the consent will be a proportion of the total allowed in the area, equivalent to the proportion of the area that the proposed farm will occupy. 3. The cumulative total net nitrogen discharge within the Coromandel Marine Farming Area shall not exceed 800 tonnes per year and the cumulative total feed discharge shall not exceed 13,600 tonnes per year. **Matters over which discretion is restricted:** 1. The staging of development. 2. The type, volume, rate and frequency of discharges of feed, medicinal or therapeutic compounds	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **NC**

	3. The extent to which the discharge is likely to cause the production of conspicuous oil, grease films, scums, foams, or floatable suspended materials 4. The ecological toxicity, persistence and bio-accumulations potential of any discharged compound or contaminants derived from them (individually and in combination) to any species potentially exposed 5. The effect of the discharge, and any contaminants derived from it, and any associated fish wastes (either by itself or in combination with other discharges) on aquatic life, kaimoana or on other marine farms 6. The effect of the discharge, and any contaminants derived from it, and any associated fish wastes on sediment quality and water quality, including colour, clarity and odour. 7. The solubility of any discharged compound and contaminants derived from it. 8. The extent to which adverse effects on water and sediment quality will impact on other activities, in particular marine farming 9. Demonstration that the volume and level of discharge has been minimised to the greatest extent possible 10. Mechanisms for modifying or changing the medicines or therapeutics to be used within the farm 11. The adequacy of the proposed disease management plan. 12. The proposed adaptive management regime 13. The proposed environmental monitoring programme in relation to its ability to address the conditions of this Rule 14. The consistency of the proposed activity with the objectives and policies of this Plan 15. The imposition of a condition relating to the review of any or all conditions.	

Discretionary Activities

AQA-R7A Marine farm structures within the Coromandel Marine Farming Area

	Activity status: DIS The erection, placement, use of, or occupation of space by, any marine farming structure within the Coromandel Marine Farming (Fed Aquaculture) Area and associated discharges to water and air (excluding the discharge of feed and medicinal or therapeutic compounds), and disturbance of and deposition on the seabed for the purpose of marine farming. <u>Where:</u> 1. The applicant holds a current authorisation issued by the Waikato Regional Council, or a current authorisation granted as a settlement asset to apply for a coastal permit to occupy space within the area. 2. The application is consistent with the applicant's tender as accepted by the Waikato Regional Council or any agreement negotiated under section 165X of the Resource Management Act	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **PR**

	1991, or a current authorisation granted as a settlement asset and approved by the Waikato Regional Council. 3. The application is not for the farming of unfed shellfish except as part of a multi-trophic farming system including fed aquaculture. 4. All components of the structure and the vessels and equipment used for placement shall be free of harmful aquatic organisms at the time of placement. 5. The staged development of the marine farm. The first stage of each resource consent may not be exercised until a baseline survey is complete. Development to the next stage may not occur until permission is granted to do so by the Waikato Regional Council. The Council will not grant that permission until: a. monitoring of a minimum of two production cycles at full development of that stage is complete b. the monitoring data has been analysed in comparison to predetermined thresholds c. there are no significant adverse effects occurring including cumulative effects, and d. compliance against resource consent conditions held for the marine farming activity has been assessed. **Assessment Criteria:** In assessing any application, regard shall be had to: 1. the potential for genetic effects on wild populations resulting from escapees and/or interbreeding 2. the potential for parasites and/or diseases to be introduced and their potential transmission between farmed stock and wild populations 3. the extent to which the activity will affect indigenous biodiversity, including any area of significant indigenous vegetation or significant habitat of indigenous fauna 4. the adequacy of any development plan, including proposals for staged and/or adaptive development. **Conditions will be imposed in respect of, but not limited to, the following matters:** 1. Staging and the staged development of the marine farm in accordance with Policy AQA-P20, and including: • Stage 1 – allowing discharge of up to 50% of the nitrogen and feed authorised. • Stage 2 – allowing discharge of up to 75% of the nitrogen and feed authorised by the consent. • Stage 3 – allowing up to 100% of the nitrogen and feed authorised by the consent. 2. Provision of bonds or other suitable security in favour of Waikato Regional Council in respect of the likely costs of removal of the structure	

	3. Reporting of stock escapes, measures taken to recapture escaped stock, and prevention of further escapes 4. Reporting of pest or disease outbreaks and measures taken to control them 5. Interactions with or entanglements of marine mammals and seabird mortalities 6. Adaptive management in order to address adverse effects on the environment, including measures such as, but not limited to, reducing production capacity or area of cages.	

AQA-R7B Marine farm structures outside the Coromandel Marine Farming Area

[Placeholder rule – refer Pare Hauraki Kaimoana private plan change request and proposed new Rule 16.5.5D(1)]]

	Activity Status: DIS The erection, placement, use of, and occupation by subsurface anchor lines and seabed anchor structures, and any associated seabed disturbance, that are located outside of the Coromandel Marine Farming Zone but are for the purposes of securing a (surface) marine farming structure located wholly within the Coromandel Marine Farming Zone. <u>Where:</u> 1. The applicant shall undertake an ecological investigation of the proposed disturbance locations and shall lodge the information gathered with the Regional Council. **Assessment Criteria:** In assessing any application, regard shall be had to: 1. the extent to which the baseline survey indicates that the proposed location of the anchor lines and seabed anchoring structures are appropriate; 2. the integrity of the anchoring system and any navigation lighting or buoyage requirements; and 3. the safety of recreational and commercial vessels in the area. **Conditions will be imposed in respect of, but not limited to, the following matters:** 1. Integrity of the structure and associated anchoring systems; 2. Provision of written notice to Land Information New Zealand and Maritime New Zealand; 3. Provision of bonds or other suitable security in favour of Waikato Regional Council in respect of the likely costs of removal of the structure; 4. Removal of the structure on expiry of the consent (if no further consent has been applied for or granted); 5. Provision of information to the Waikato Regional Council with respect to the final location of the structure; 6. Interactions with or entanglements of marine mammals and seabird mortalities; vii) Timing and purpose of reviews of any or	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **NC**

	all conditions in accordance with section 128 of the Resource Management Act 1991.	

6 BIO – Biosecurity | Ārai taiao

Overview

The introduction of marine pests, including harmful aquatic organisms can have irreversible effects, including biodiversity loss and the alteration of ecosystem function. Vessel and equipment movements, and aquaculture activities can facilitate the introduction of invasive species to new areas and accelerate rates of spread. The risk from these activities can be managed through the coastal plan.

The control of marine pests (including the use of substances and any associated discharge technique or method) must also be undertaken in accordance with the requirements of the Biosecurity Act 1993, and the Hazardous Substances and New Organisms Act 1996.

Policy 12 of the NZCPS requires regional councils to provide for the control of activities that could have adverse effects on the coastal environment by causing harmful aquatic organisms to be released or otherwise spread. Resource consent conditions can also help to prevent or mitigate these risks from activities.

Activities which may present a biosecurity risk to the CMA include:

- the introduction of structures contaminated with marine pests and harmful aquatic organisms
- discharge or disposal of organic material from dredging, or from vessels and structures, whether during maintenance, cleaning or otherwise; and whether in the coastal marine area or on land
- provision and ongoing maintenance of moorings, marina berths, jetties, and wharves
- establishment and relocation of equipment and stock required for, or associated with, aquaculture.
- The deposition of substances that may have an adverse effect on the foreshore or seabed and introducing or planting exotic or introduced plants may also pose biosecurity risks.

Cross references to other relevant plan provisions

Other coastal plan chapters contain provisions that may also be relevant to biosecurity, particularly where activities require consideration of biosecurity risk. These include:

- **Aquaculture AQA** – which includes provisions relating to biosecurity risk from aquaculture activities and the transfer of species.
- **Disturbance and Deposition DD** – which includes provisions relating to the disturbance and deposition of the foreshore and seabed.
- **Ecosystems and indigenous biodiversity ECO** – which includes provisions relating to the protection and maintenance of indigenous biological diversity, including marine mammals.
- **Integrated Management IM** – which contains objectives and policies regarding integrated and cross-boundary management of resources, and support multi-stakeholder approaches to biosecurity incursion management.
- **Moorings MO** – which contains provisions relating to the establishment, management, and location of vessel moorings.
- **Structures STR** – which contains provisions for maintaining, repairing, replacing, or removing existing marine farm structures.

- **Water take, use, divert and discharge WT** – which includes provisions relating to discharges to the coastal marine area, including contaminants.

Objectives

BIO-O1 Biosecurity incursions

Ecosystem function and the environment are protected from the adverse effects of marine pests and harmful aquatic organisms.

Policies

BIO-P1 Introduction of marine pests and harmful aquatic organisms

Manage the following activities in the coastal marine area to prevent or minimise the risk of introduction or spread of marine pests and harmful aquatic organisms:

1. Maintenance (including hull cleaning) of structures, movable objects and ships
2. Introduction or placement of a structure or installation
3. Relocation of equipment or machinery
4. Relocation of stock in the case of aquaculture.

BIO-P2 Introduction of exotic organisms

Avoid, or if avoidance is not possible, adequately mitigate, adverse effects resulting from the introduction of exotic organisms on:

1. Indigenous biodiversity values, including the habitats of rare and threatened species
2. Seascape values
3. Natural character
4. The functioning of natural ecosystems; or
5. The functioning of geophysical processes which form and maintain estuaries and open coast areas.

BIO-P3 Removal of marine pests and harmful aquatic organisms

Enable the removal of marine pests and harmful aquatic organisms from the coastal marine area where the removal:

1. Meets the requirements of an approved biosecurity risk management plan; or
2. Is being undertaken by or on behalf of Regional Council, Local Authorities, Ministry for Primary Industries, Department of Conservation, or Land Information New Zealand.

BIO-P4 Discharge of energy or contaminants for biosecurity purposes

Allow for the discharge of energy or potential contaminants in the coastal marine area necessary to manage marine pests and harmful aquatic organisms, where:

1. This presents the most suitable method to eliminate, control or manage the incursion
2. Significant adverse effects on resulting from the discharge can be adequately mitigated.

Rules

Permitted Activities

BIO-R1 Discharge of contaminants from in-water cleaning of biofouling

	Activity status: PER The discharge of contaminants from the cleaning of biofouling from the part of a vessel, or moveable structure that is normally below the water surface into water in the coastal marine area and any associated deposition on the foreshore or seabed. Where: 1. The activity is not undertaken within an area of Outstanding Natural Character identified in Schedule 4 or an area of Significant Indigenous Biodiversity (SIBA-A) as identified in Schedule 7 2. Biofouling coverage is less than or equal to 2 on the Level of Fouling (LOF) Scale 3. The anti-foul coating on the vessel or moveable structure has not exceeded its planned service life, as specified by the manufacturer, and the cleaning method is non-abrasive and undertaken in accordance with recommendations obtained from the coating manufacturer 4. All macrofouling dislodged during cleaning (other than goose barnacles) is captured and disposed of at a location authorised to take such material (microfouling and goose barnacles may be cleaned without capture) 5. If any marine pest is found, then: a. all cleaning must cease, and b. the Regional Council's Biosecurity Manager and the Ministry for Primary Industries must be notified immediately, and c. cleaning must not resume until notification to do so is obtained from the Regional Council's Biosecurity Manager and the Ministry for Primary Industries.	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **DIS -** If Rule BIO-R1(1), BIO-R1(3) or BIO-R1(4) cannot be met (see Rule BIO-R7) **PR -** If Rule BIO-R1(2) cannot be met (see Rule BIO-R8)

BIO-R2 Permitted removal or control of marine pests and harmful aquatic organisms

	Activity status: PER The removal or control of marine pests and harmful aquatic organisms in the coastal marine area. Where: 1. Removal or control is undertaken by or on behalf of Regional Council, Local Authorities, Ministry for Primary Industries, Department of Conservation, or Land Information New Zealand 2. Notification of the activity is received by Regional Council at least 10 working days prior to the activity commencing 3. Control of marine pests and harmful aquatic organisms (including the use of substances and/or contaminants and any	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **CON**

	associated discharge technique or method) must also be undertaken in accordance with any relevant requirements of the Biosecurity Act 1993, Hazardous Substances and New Organisms Act 1996, and Agricultural Compounds and Veterinary Medicines Act 1997. *Advisory notes:* 1. *Removal or control as specified in BIO-R2(1) includes both physical removal methods and/or the discharge of contaminants (including hazardous substances) to the coastal marine area for biosecurity purposes.* 2. *For the avoidance of doubt, this rule also covers removal or control of marine pests and harmful aquatic organisms in Outstanding Natural Character and Significant Indigenous Biodiversity Areas when undertaken by those authorised in Rule BIO R2-(1).*	

Controlled Activities

BIO-R3 Physical removal or control of marine pests and harmful aquatic organisms

	Activity status: CON The physical removal or control of marine pests or harmful aquatic organisms from the coastal marine area. Where: 1. The activity does not comply with Rule BIO-R2; and 2. The discharge of hazardous substances to the coastal marine area is not required for the removal or control of the marine pest(s) or harmful aquatic organism(s); and 3. The area where the marine pest(s) or harmful aquatic organism(s) to be removed or controlled is not an area of Outstanding Natural Character identified in Schedule 4 or Significant Indigenous Biodiversity (SIBA-A) identified in Schedule 7; and 4. A Biosecurity Risk Management Plan is prepared and submitted as part of the application for resource consent. **Control is reserved over**: 1. The location and size of the area where the marine pest(s) or harmful aquatic organism(s) are to be removed or controlled 2. The method of removal or control and disposal of the marine pest(s) or harmful aquatic organism(s) 3. The risk of marine pest(s) or harmful aquatic organism(s) spreading as a result of removal and disposal methods, and the procedures to be put in place to minimise this risk 4. The timing and frequency of removal 5. Effects of the removal methods and the removal of marine pest(s) or harmful aquatic organism(s) on the environment 6. Proposed monitoring requirements.	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **DIS**

	Advisory note: 1. *Where the activity requires the discharge of hazardous substances, Rule BIO-R7 applies.*	

Restricted Discretionary Activities

BIO-R4 Introduction of exotic organisms

	Activity status: RDA The introduction or transfer of exotic organisms to and within the coastal marine area. Where: 1. The organism is not identified as a pest in the Regional Pest Management Plan or as an unwanted organism under the Biosecurity Act 1993, unless approved by the Ministry of Primary Industries; 2. A biosecurity risk management plan is prepared and submitted with any application for resource consent which addresses: a. The risk of marine pests and harmful aquatic organisms establishing as a result of the introduction or transfer of exotic organisms for aquaculture purposes, and likely adverse effects; b. Methods and procedures to be put in place to minimise the risk of establishment of harmful aquatic organisms; c. Proposed monitoring. 3. All relevant aquaculture rules and associated conditions are met. **Matters of Discretion** In assessing any application for the introduction of exotic organisms, regard shall be had to: 1. The extent to which the introduction will adversely affect any significant biodiversity areas identified in Schedule 7; 2. The extent to which the activity will adversely affect any indigenous biodiversity or habitat already present in the area; 3. The maintenance of ecological function; and 4. The extent to which the proposed exotic organisms has the potential to impede the existing flow patterns of water or sediment. 5. The biosecurity management plan prepared as part of the consent application.	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **N/A**

Discretionary Activities

BIO-R5 Discharge of energy or contaminants for biosecurity purposes

	Activity status: DIS The discharge of energy or contaminants (including hazardous substances) in the coastal marine area for the purpose of controlling or eradicating marine pests or harmful aquatic organisms. Where: 1. the discharge does not come within or comply with Rule BIO-R2, or any other rule in this Plan excluding discharges regulated by the Resource Management (Marine Pollution) Regulations 1998 (Appendix 5)	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **N/A**

BIO-R6 Removal of marine pests or harmful aquatic organisms in Outstanding Natural Character or Significant Indigenous Biodiversity A areas

	Activity status: DIS The removal or control of marine pests or harmful aquatic organisms in an area of Outstanding Natural Character or Significant Indigenous Biodiversity (SIBA-A) as identified in Schedule 7 Where: 1. The removal or control does not come within or comply with Rule BIO-R2.	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **N/A**

BIO-R7 In-water cleaning of biofouling

	Activity status: DIS In-water cleaning of biofouling from the part of a vessel or moveable structure that is normally below the water surface into water in the coastal marine area and any associated deposition on the foreshore or seabed that does not meet the requirements of Rule BIO-R1(1), BIO-R1(3) or BIO-R1(4).	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **N/A**

Prohibited Activities

BIO-R8 Discharge from in-water cleaning of vessel hulls where fouling is exceeded

	Activity status: PR The discharge from cleaning a vessel hull and niche areas below the water level when the boat is in the water and the bio-fouling level is greater than a slime layer and barnacles (Level 2 on the Level of Fouling (LOF) Scale).	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **N/A**

BIO-R9 Introduction of Exotic Plant Species

	Activity status: PR The introduction of any exotic plant species into SIBA-A as described in Schedule 7 is a prohibited activity.	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **N/A**

7 ECO – Ecosystems and indigenous biodiversity | Te mauri o te taiao me te rerenga rauropi

Overview

Indigenous biodiversity includes all plants and animals that occur naturally in New Zealand; either they have evolved here or arrived and established without any assistance from humans. An ecosystem is a biological community of interacting organisms and their physical environment. Ecosystems and indigenous biodiversity in the coastal marine area of the Waikato region are declining. Some coastal marine habitats and ecosystems are severely degraded and under increasing pressure from climate change impacts. Some coastal fauna, such as Māui dolphin, are threatened with extinction.

As biodiversity declines, so do ecosystem processes, functions and integrity. Biodiversity loss is also associated with habitat loss and fragmentation, disrupting connectivity between habitats and ecosystems. This especially affects species that depend on a range of habitats, such as migratory shorebirds and seabirds.

Protection of indigenous biodiversity from the adverse effects of activities and inappropriate development, and maintaining, restoring and enhancing other indigenous biodiversity areas is required by the NZCPS and RPS, which provide specific direction reflected in the policies of this chapter. In doing so the life-supporting capacity of ecosystems is safeguarded in accordance with the purpose of the RMA.

Schedule 7 identifies sites with significant indigenous biodiversity values that require protection as a matter of national importance under Section 6(e) of the RMA. These areas have been identified using the criteria in Table 11A of the RPS and give effect to Policy 11 of the NZCPS. The sites are shown on planning maps as the following overlays:

- SIBA-A: Significant Indigenous Biodiversity Areas A
- SIBA-B: Significant Indigenous Biodiversity Areas B

A precautionary approach is required to manage effects in the coastal environment on ecosystems and indigenous biodiversity values.

Activities that may adversely affect ecosystems and indigenous biodiversity are required to consider the scale and type of effect in applying for resource consent.

Cross references to other relevant plan provisions

Other chapters contain provisions to consider and address effects on indigenous biodiversity, these include:

- **Aquaculture AQA** – in relation to marine farming that may affect ecosystems and indigenous biodiversity values
- **Biosecurity BS** – in relation to managing effects from the introduction of harmful marine organisms

- **Disturbance and Deposition DD** – in relation to any temporary or ongoing disturbance and deposition of the seabed and foreshore that may impact ecosystems and indigenous biodiversity
- **Integrated Management IM** – which contains policies relating to adaptive management and taking a precautionary approach
- **Noise NOISE** – in relation to managing effects of underwater noise on marine mammals and other species
- **Structures STR** – in relation to marine structures that may affect ecosystems and indigenous biodiversity
- **Water Quality WQ** – in relation to managing effects of discharges that may adversely impact ecosystems and indigenous biodiversity.

Objectives

ECO-O1 Protect ecosystems and indigenous biodiversity

Ecosystems and indigenous biodiversity in the coastal marine area is maintained, enhanced and restored, and areas of significant indigenous biodiversity in the coastal marine area are protected.

ECO-O2 Prevent loss of ecosystems and indigenous biodiversity

The decline in habitat quality and extent, populations of rare and threatened species and their habitats, and ecosystem processes in the coastal marine area is prevented.

Policies

ECO-P1 Avoid adverse effects on significant indigenous biodiversity

Avoid adverse effects of activities on:

1. The values of SIBA-A sites listed in Schedule 7
2. Threatened and At-Risk species listed in the New Zealand Threat Classification System lists
3. Species that are listed by the International Union for Conservation of Nature and Natural Resources as threatened
4. Threatened or naturally rare species and their habitats.

ECO-P2 Avoid significant adverse effects on significant indigenous biodiversity

Avoid significant adverse effects and avoid, remedy or mitigate other adverse effects of activities on:

1. The values of SIBA-B sites listed in Schedule 7
2. Areas of predominantly indigenous vegetation not listed in Schedule 7, including sub-tidal values
3. Habitats that are important to marine mammals, seabirds and shorebirds including roosting and feeding areas and migratory routes
4. Habitats that are important during the vulnerable life stages of indigenous species, including chenier plains and intertidal wetlands
5. Indigenous ecosystems and habitats that are found only in the coastal environment and are particularly vulnerable to modification, including but not limited to estuaries, lagoons, coastal wetlands, dunelands, intertidal zones, rocky reef systems, eelgrass and saltmarsh
6. Habitats of indigenous species in the coastal environment that are important for recreational, commercial, or cultural purposes

7. Ecological corridors and areas important for linking or maintaining biological values identified under this policy and ECO-P1.

ECO-P3 Assessment of adverse effects on indigenous biodiversity

When assessing the extent and consequence of any adverse effects of activities on indigenous biodiversity:

1. Consider any existing activities and their effects
2. Consider that a minor or transitory effect may be an acceptable adverse effect
3. Consider the potential for cumulative effects that are more than minor
4. Consider that habitats may change over time, be wide ranging and may be seasonal in nature
5. Consider how climate change will change the nature and distribution of habitats and species
6. Have regard to any restoration or enhancement of indigenous biodiversity values
7. Have regard to the effects on the tangata whenua cultural and spiritual values of indigenous biodiversity, in accordance with tikanga Māori.

ECO-P4 Provide for use and development that may impact indigenous biodiversity

Consider providing for use and development that will adversely impact the indigenous biodiversity values associated with the areas listed in ECO-P1 and ECO-P2, where the proposal:

1. Relates to the operation, maintenance or protection of existing regionally significant infrastructure or upgrading regionally significant infrastructure provided that the scale and intensity of adverse effects from the proposal are the same or similar as those arising from the existing infrastructure; or
2. Relates to the construction, operation, maintenance, protection or upgrading of the national grid; or
3. Relates to a use that was lawfully established prior to the plan establishment, provided there has been no change to the scale and significance of effects associated with an activity; or
4. Provides for public walking or boating access to and along the coastal marine area;
5. Provides for access to cultural heritage sites or sites of significance for traditional use; and
6. Provides for the enhancement and restoration of indigenous biodiversity and ecosystems of the coastal environment.

ECO-P5 Promote enhancement and restoration of indigenous biodiversity values

Promote enhancement and restoration of indigenous biodiversity values, including by:

1. Enhancing water quality, for example by reducing the amount of nutrients or other contaminants entering the coastal marine area
2. Removing derelict and redundant structures, where structures are having adverse effects on biodiversity values
3. Restoring or enhancing natural elements including dunes, saline wetlands, inter-tidal saltmarsh, riparian margins and other natural coastal features or processes
4. Restoring or enhancing indigenous species, habitats and ecosystems (using local genetic stock where practicable) including restoring habitats of species that are important for cultural purposes (such as mahinga kai, kaimoana or raranga areas) identified in collaboration with tangata whenua
5. Supporting the natural regeneration of indigenous species, including effective weed and animal pest management
6. Identifying ecological and culturally appropriate sites for enhancement and restoration
7. Declaiming previously reclaimed and redundant land where it will restore the natural character of the coastal marine area

8. Recognising the importance of some indigenous species that provide a buffer for coastal processes causing erosion including inundation and enable carbon sequestration
9. Taking a collaborative approach to enhancing and restoring indigenous biodiversity through engagement with territorial authorities, tangata whenua and local communities
10. Minimising sediment deposition from direct and indirect sources.

ECO-P6 Mature mangrove removal

Enable mature mangrove removal only where it is necessary to do one or more of the following:

1. Maintain, restore or enhance indigenous biodiversity values of an area, including wading bird habitat and roosting areas in areas identified as significant for shorebirds
2. Improve water quality, connections between water bodies or between freshwater bodies and coastal water, or other natural processes in the area
3. Maintain existing public access to the coastal marine area
4. Maintain, restore and enhance access to mahinga kai or areas of traditional cultural use
5. Maintain historic heritage places
6. Maintain operation of regionally significant infrastructure, the national grid or public infrastructure such as roads, walkways and drainage systems.

ECO-P7 Mangrove seedling removal

Enable mangrove seedling removal where:

1. No mature mangroves are removed or harmed during seedling removal
2. The mangrove seedlings are located immediately adjacent to or within the footprint of a lawfully established structure; or
3. The removal of seedlings is to provide for access to marae, urupā and reserve access ways.

ECO-P8 Mangrove removal – adverse effects

When considering resource consents for mangrove removal, have regard to a range of potential adverse effects, in particular:

1. The effects on ecological values including:
    a. Disturbance, displacement or loss of fauna and habitat
    b. Disturbing or displacing birds classified as Threatened or At Risk in the New Zealand Threat Classification System list
    c. Disturbing ecological corridors and ecological sequences
    d. Removal of a buffer to sensitive ecological areas
    e. Disturbance of the foreshore and seabed, including compaction, sediment redistribution, and mangrove biomass deposition.
2. Increased risk of coastal erosion and inundation where mangroves provide a buffer against costal processes causing erosion, including inundation; and
3. Effects on tangata whenua cultural values
4. Amenity impacts from removal and disposal including noise, smoke, odour and visual impacts
5. Short and long-term effects on local sediment characteristics and hydrodynamics.

ECO-P9 Indigenous biodiversity offsetting

Provide for adverse effects on indigenous biodiversity to be offset only when the effects, including residual effects after mitigation, cannot be avoided, remedied or mitigated and must:

6. Be applied in a manner that is consistent with principles in Schedule 7A
7. Avoid harm to rare, at risk or threatened species or ecosystems
8. Achieve an outcome of no-net-loss or preferably, a net gain in indigenous biodiversity
9. Provide for a like for like replacement of species and a net gain in the same ecologically relevant locality as the affected habitat, if possible.

ECO-P10 Avoiding disturbance and other activities in vulnerable ecologically significant areas

Within identified vulnerable ecologically significant marine areas, activities that disturb the foreshore and seabed or adversely affect indigenous biodiversity values must be avoided.

Rules

Permitted Activities

ECO-R1 Permitted indigenous vegetation removal

	Activity status: PER The removal of indigenous vegetation (excluding mangroves) for the following purposes: 1. Customary use by Māori 2. Maintaining an existing boat access channel or an existing boat launching site (including a jetty) 3. Maintaining existing drainage canal outlets, floodgate outlets and stop banks 4. Maintenance or restoration of shorebird roosting sites, carried out by the Department of Conservation or its agents. 5. Maintaining, enhancing or restoring historic heritage places. Where: 1. Removal does not require use of a motor vehicle on or within any SIBA-A or SIBA-B site as identified in Schedule 7 2. The maximum area of vegetation to be removed for any individual boat channel or launching site in any one year is 10m².	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **DIS**

ECO-R2 Introduction of indigenous plant species

	Activity status: PER The introduction of any indigenous plant species in the coastal marine area in areas where these species exist currently or existed historically. Where: 1. The introduction is for the purpose of restoring or enhancing the indigenous biodiversity values of any area within the coastal marine area 2. Sediment discharge to the coastal marine area during planting is to be minimised, with no other contaminants to be discharged during introduction.	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **DIS**

ECO-R3 Removal of mangrove seedlings outside of SIBA-A

	Activity status: PER The removal of mangrove seedlings and any associated disturbance to the foreshore and seabed in areas not identified as SIBA-A. <u>Where:</u> 1. Removal shall be undertaken by hand or using handheld tools 2. Chemical herbicides shall not be used 3. The activity shall avoid disturbance or damage to areas of saltmarsh or seagrass 4. Access to removal areas shall be by existing open areas or paths 5. In areas that have been identified as bird roosting or nesting sites in Schedule 7 to this Plan, removal must not be undertaken between 1 September and 31 January (inclusive) to avoid bird roosting and nesting seasons 6. No motor vehicles are to be used within the CMA 7. All material shall be removed from the CMA and shall be appropriately disposed of on land, within the same tidal cycle in which it was removed from the ground. <u>*Advisory note:*</u> *This rule includes the following activities:* *1. Disturbance of the foreshore or seabed;* *2. Deposition of material on the foreshore or seabed;* *3. Removal, damage, modification or destruction of mangrove seedlings growing in the foreshore or seabed;* *4. Discharge of sediment to the coastal marine area resulting from mangrove removal.*	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **DIS**

ECO-R4 Removal of mangrove seedlings from SIBA-A sites

	Activity status: PER The removal of mangrove seedlings from an SIBA-A site and any associated disturbance to the foreshore and seabed. Where: 1. The removal meets the conditions in ECO-R3 2. The seedlings are located immediately adjacent to or within the footprint of a lawfully established structure, network infrastructure or existing drainage system and doesn't exceed the following maximum allowable area of removal: a. The footprint of the structure with an additional 5m around the perimeter for the purpose of structure maintenance, or 3. The removal of seedlings is to provide for access to marae, urupā and reserve access ways, and where the removal is restricted to a 5m wide access channel between the marae, urupa or reserve and the nearest permanently navigable waters 4. Where the site is identified as a bird roosting site at certain times of the year in Schedule 7 seedling removal must not exceed 20m around the perimeter of the roosting site. *Advisory note:* *This rule includes the following activities:* *1. Disturbance of the foreshore or seabed;* *2. Deposition of material on the foreshore or seabed;* *3. Removal, damage, modification or destruction of mangroves growing in the foreshore or seabed;* 4. *Discharge of sediment to the coastal marine area resulting from mangrove removal.*	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **DIS**

ECO-R5 Removal of mangroves where consented clearance has occurred

	Activity status: PER The removal of mangroves that is carried out as a part of ongoing maintenance within areas where clearance of seedlings or mature mangroves has previously been authorised by a resource consent. Where: 1. Removal of mangroves has been undertaken during the preceding five years (this can include seedling removal) 2. The activity shall not damage or disturb a SIBA-A site listed in Schedule 7 3. Tracked or wheeled machinery shall not be used in the coastal marine area 4. Removal shall be undertaken by hand or using hand-held tools 5. Motorized hand tools shall not be used within 5m of the boundary of an area from which mangroves have been lawfully removed 6. Chemical herbicides shall not be used	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **NC**

	7. The activity shall not disturb or damage areas of saltmarsh or seagrass 8. Access to removal areas shall be by existing open areas or paths 9. In areas that have been identified as bird roosting or nesting sites in Schedule 7, removal must not be undertaken between 1 September and 31 January (inclusive) to avoid bird roosting and nesting seasons 10. All material shall be removed from the CMA and shall be appropriately disposed of on land, within the same tidal cycle in which it was removed from the ground. *<u>Advisory note:</u>* *This rule includes the following activities:* *1. Disturbance of the foreshore or seabed;* *2. Removal, damage, modification or destruction of mangroves growing in the foreshore or seabed;* *3. Discharge of sediment to the coastal marine area resulting from mangrove removal.*	

Restricted Discretionary Activities

ECO-R6 Restoration of indigenous species or habitats

	Activity status: RD The deposition of any substrate material for the purposes of restoring or enhancing indigenous biodiversity and ecosystems. <u>Where:</u> 1. The habitat or species to be restored is placed within an existing habitat where it is appropriate 2. Any substrate material is not placed on any shellfish bed or other habitat type, or existing within estuarine habitat identified as a significant value in Schedule 7 3. The substrate material must be sourced from the same ecological district, or an adjacent district if not available within the same ecological district 4. The substrate material, the species to be re-established and any vessels and equipment used to carry out the activity do not contain or harbour any harmful aquatic organisms at the time of placement. **Matters of discretion:** 1. The location and scale of the activity 2. The species or habitat to be re-introduced and its source 3. The substate material to be deposited and its source 4. The methods used to remove any harmful aquatic organisms from the substrate material and from the species to be re-introduced 5. The time of the year when the placement is to occur	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **DIS**

	6. Any beneficial or adverse effects on other species or ecosystems at the site of placement or in the vicinity of the placement area.	

Discretionary Activities

ECO-R7 Removal of areas of mature mangroves

	Activity status: DIS The removal of mature mangroves not in an SIB-A site.	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **NC**

Methods

ECO-M1 Identifying vulnerable ecological areas in Schedule 7c

Council will identify and insert areas into Schedule 7c (Ecologically Significant Marine Areas Vulnerable to Disturbance activities), where there is sufficient information to support the protection of these areas.

8 EI – Energy and infrastructure | Pūngao me ngā hanganga matua

Overview

This chapter provides direction for the management of existing and new infrastructure, including renewable energy generation, in the coastal marine area. It is also supported by more detailed objectives and policies threaded through other chapters of this plan.

The operative Waikato Regional Policy Statement defines regionally significant infrastructure. In addition to these, this Plan identifies Te Ariki (Sugar Loaf) Wharf and Kōpū Marine Precinct as development areas within which development, such as new wharves, commercial vessel access, and dredging for navigation channels is generally allowed, subject to resource consent requirements.

The National Policy Statement for Renewable Energy Generation 2011 (NPS-REG) requires the inclusion of objectives, policies and methods to provide for the development, operation, maintenance, and upgrading of new and existing renewable electricity generation activities using solar, biomass, tidal, wave, ocean current energy and wind resources to the extent applicable to the region.

The National Policy Statement for Electricity Transmission 2008 (NPS-ET) requires the Plan to facilitate long-term planning for investment in transmission infrastructure and its integration with land uses.

Cross references to other relevant plan provisions

Other coastal plan chapters contain provisions that may also be relevant to energy and infrastructure, these include:

- **Disturbance and deposition DD** – in relation to establishing, using, and maintaining renewable energy and infrastructure which often involves disturbing the foreshore and seabed and can interrupt coastal processes.
- **Ecosystems and indigenous biodiversity ECO** – in relation to protecting wildlife, including seabirds and marine mammals
- **Natural hazards NH** – renewable energy and infrastructure in the coastal marine area will need to adapt and respond to rising see levels in managing coastal hazard risks
- **Public access and recreation PA** – in relation to enabling or restricting public access.
- **Structures STR** – in relation to location, construction, upgrading and maintenance of structures for renewable energy and infrastructure.

Objectives

EI-O1 Benefits of Energy and Infrastructure

The social, economic, cultural and environmental benefits of regionally significant infrastructure, development zones and renewable energy generation activities are recognised.

Policies

EI-P1 Reverse sensitivity

Ensure that the use, operation, maintenance and upgrade of regionally significant infrastructure and renewable energy generation activities in the coastal marine area are protected from incompatible use and development occurring in proximity to the infrastructure.

EI-P2 Renewable energy generation

Have regard to the practical constraints for renewable energy generation activities in the coastal marine area, including:

1. The availability of renewable energy resources.
2. The need for generation of renewable electricity to locate where the resource exists.
3. The need to connect to the electricity supply network or national grid.

EI-P3 Development areas

Enable development and activities required for the use and operation of Development Areas.

Rules

Advisory note:

1. *This chapter contains no rules. The objective and policies for Energy and Infrastructure are to be given effect to through the relevant activity rules of the plan.*

9 DD – Disturbance and deposition | Pūngao me ngā hanganga matua

Overview

Disturbances in the coastal marine area can include activities such as dredging, the extraction of minerals, the use of vehicles on the foreshore or stock access, reclamation of the foreshore, the dumping of materials, and seabed drilling.

Under s.12 RMA, no person may destroy, damage or disturb the foreshore or seabed in a manner that is likely to have an adverse effect on the foreshore or seabed, or on plants and animals or their habitats, unless expressly allowed by a rule in the plan or they hold a resource consent. The RMA places a similar restriction on reclamation and drainage of the foreshore and seabed, and the removal of sand, shell, shingle or other natural material.

Activities which disturb the foreshore and/or seabed will normally require resource consent, unless undertaken as part of restoration or enhancement activities or during the course of public activities. There are many activities carried out in the CMA which may enhance amenity values, alleviate problems which threaten public safety or well-being, and improve public access, but which also disturb the foreshore and seabed. Such activities may include beach grooming, the removal of vegetation, the use of vehicles on the foreshore, and the burial of dead marine mammals and other marine fauna.

Cross references to other relevant plan provisions

Other chapters contain provisions relevant to structures and associated activities, these include:

- **Ecosystems and indigenous biodiversity ECO** – in relation to protecting indigenous biodiversity values, including seabirds and marine mammals.
- **Public access and recreation PA** – in relation to enabling or restricting public access associated with disturbance or deposition activities.
- **Structures – STR** in relation to establishing, using, and maintaining structures which often involves disturbing the foreshore and seabed and can interrupt coastal processes.

Objectives

DD-O1 Avoid adverse effects from dredging or removal of natural material

Natural coastal processes and the functioning of coastal ecosystems are protected from the effects of inappropriate dredging or the removal of sand, shell and other natural material.

DD-O2 Mitigate adverse effects from deposition of disposal of material

Deposition or disposal of material in the coastal marine area mitigates adverse effects on natural coastal processes, water quality and ecology.

DD-O3 Prevent inappropriate reclamation or drainage

Inappropriate reclamation or drainage of the foreshore or seabed is prevented.

Policies

DD-P1 Recognition of dredging, disturbance and deposition activities

Recognise that dredging, disturbance and deposition activities may be necessary:

1. For the continued operation of existing infrastructure, or
2. For the establishment, operation, maintenance, upgrade or development of regionally significant infrastructure, or
3. To maintain or improve access and navigational safety within the coastal marine area, or
4. For beach re-nourishment or replenishment activities, or
5. To protect, restore or rehabilitate ecological or recreational values, or
6. When it is undertaken in association with the deposition of material for beneficial purposes, including the restoration or enhancement of natural systems and features that contribute towards reducing the impacts of coastal hazards.

DD-P2 Recognising the appropriateness of minor disturbance activities

Recognise that minor disturbance activities, including vehicle use, in the coastal marine area that have minor impact or temporary effects or have a functional need can be appropriate.

DD-P3 Restricting the use of vehicles on the foreshore and seabed

Restrict the use of vehicles on the foreshore and seabed to those which have a legitimate need to use such areas.

DD-P4 Temporary disturbance and deposition by New Zealand Defence Force activities

Allow for disturbance and deposition in the coastal marine areas associated with temporary activities undertaken by the New Zealand Defence Force, except in any:

1. Outstanding Natural Character area (as identified in Schedule 4)
2. Site or Area of Significance to Māori (as identified in Schedule 6)
3. Significant Indigenous Biodiversity A area (as identified in Schedule 7).

DD-P5 Activities disturbing the foreshore and seabed

Ensure that activities which disturb the foreshore and seabed:

1. Avoid significant adverse effects, and remedy or mitigate other adverse effects, on:
   a. the feeding, spawning and migratory patterns of indigenous fauna, including bird roosting, nesting and feeding, and whitebait runs
   b. indigenous ecosystems and habitats that are particularly vulnerable to modification, including: estuaries, lagoons, coastal wetlands, dunelands, intertidal zones, rocky reef systems, eelgrass and saltmarsh
   c. habitats of indigenous species that are important for recreational, commercial, cultural or traditional purposes, including traditional Māori gathering, collection or harvest of kaimoana; and
2. Reinstate the foreshore or seabed in keeping with the natural character and visual amenity of the area; and
3. Avoid significant adverse effects on plants and animals caused by the release of contaminants; and
4. Avoid causing long-term erosion or damage to any authorised structure within the coastal marine area or on adjacent land.

DD-P6 Providing for maintenance of river or flood protection works

Allow for the maintenance of drainage schemes, navigation channels and river or flood protection works in the coastal marine area, provided any adverse effects from the disturbance or removal of sediment and other natural material, are sufficiently avoided, remedied or mitigated.

DD-P7 Appropriate circumstances for reclamation

Allow reclamation to be considered only where all of the following criteria are met:

1. There are no practicable alternative ways of providing for the activity, including locating it on land outside the coastal marine area; There is a functional need to be located in the coastal marine area
2. The reclamation will provide significant regional or national benefit.

DD-P8 Reclamation form and design

In circumstances where reclamation is considered appropriate, ensure reclamation form and design has particular regard to:

1. The potential effects on the site of climate change, including sea level rise, over no less than 100 years
2. The shape and extent to which the materials are visually and aesthetically compatible with the adjoining coast
3. Materials used in the reclamation or retaining walls (bunds) do not contain any contaminants that will or have potential to adversely affect water quality, aquatic ecosystems and indigenous biodiversity
4. The provision for public access to and along the coastal marine area, unless a restriction is required consistent with Policy PAR-P3; and
5. The ability to remedy or mitigate any adverse effects
6. Whether the reclamation will affect cultural landscapes and sites of significance to tangata whenua
7. The ability to avoid consequential erosion and accretion, and other natural hazards
8. The extent to which the reclamation provides for the efficient operation of infrastructure.

DD-P9 Declamation of reclaimed land

Declamation of reclaimed land is encouraged where it will restore natural character and resources of the coastal marine area and provide improved public access or greater open water space.

DD-P10 Authorising unlawful reclamation

Assess whether authorising unlawful reclamation in the coastal marine area is appropriate having regard to:

1. The extent of social or economic benefit provided to the public, including whether it is necessary to enable the operation of infrastructure
2. Whether there will be more significant adverse effects resulting from the works required to remove rather than retain the reclamation
3. The extent to which removal of the reclamation is practicable.

DD-P11 Prospecting, mining and exploration in the coastal marine area

Disturbance of the foreshore and seabed associated with prospecting for, exploration for, and mining of sand, shell, shingle and other natural material within any high value area is an inappropriate activity for which resource consent shall not be granted.

Rules

Advisory note:
The rules for this chapter are set out in the following sections:

A. General disturbance activities
B. Disturbance and removal
C. Flood protection and maintenance dredging
D. Deposition or disposal of material
E. Reclamation and removal of existing reclamations

A. General disturbance activities

Permitted activities

DD-R1 Recreation or temporary events on the foreshore

	Activity status: PER Recreation or temporary events on the foreshore: Where: 1. All equipment, materials or rubbish is removed at the completion of the activity 2. Ancillary vehicle use is for less than one week 3. The activity does not take place in, or involve disturbance, damage or destruction in areas of shellfish beds, vegetated by mangroves, eel grass, saltmarsh or bird foraging areas during nesting season 4. Is not on or within any habitat identified as a significant value in Schedule 7 and does not result or potentially result in harm to any threatened or at risk species identified in Schedule 7 5. There is no damage to sites of significance to tangata whenua, wāhi tapu or place of historic heritage 6. There is no damage to public infrastructure or public facilities or infrastructure, such as roads, reserves, recreational facilities, stopbanks, and flood gates 7. Any disturbance is remedied within 48 hours at the conclusion of the activity 8. Public access is not restricted except where necessary to protect health and safety 9. Sand, shell, shingle or natural material is not removed or moved to and alternative location 10. The activity complies with the noise provisions of this plan.	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **DIS**

DD-R2 Use of a vehicle on the foreshore or seabed

	Activity status: PER The use of a vehicle on the foreshore or seabed for the following activities: 1. Launching and retrieving a vessel at a boat launching site 2. Surf Life saving (including the use of an all-terrain vehicle) 3. Department of Conservation activities in accordance with statutory functions 4. Dune management activities or the servicing of public facilities or infrastructure undertaken by local authorities 5. Access to private property if there is no other practicable means of access 6. Access for people with disabilities 7. Defence purposes undertaken in accordance with the Defence Act 1990 8. Temporary events authorised under the Waikato Regional Council Navigation Bylaw 9. New Zealand Police, New Zealand Fire and Emergency Services and Ambulance Services. Where: 1. The vehicle is not a hovercraft, all-terrain or amphibious vehicle 2. No contaminants are discharged from vehicles, and an emergency spill plan is in place to address any unforeseen release of contaminants from equipment being used for the activity 3. Any visual disturbance is remedied within 24 hours 4. There is no damage to dune, geological systems and processes, or the habitats of fisheries resources of significance to customary, commercial or recreational users 5. There are no adverse effects on shellfish beds, vegetated areas, or bird foraging areas during nesting season 6. Is not on or within any habitat identified as a significant value in Schedule 7 and does not result or potentially result in harm to any threatened or at risk species identified in Schedule 7 7. There is no damage to sites of significance to tangata whenua, wāhi tapu or historic heritage 8. There is no risk to people's health and safety or peaceful enjoyment 9. Vehicles operate and take routes to minimise disturbance to the foreshore and seabed 10. The activity complies with the noise provisions of this plan.	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **DIS**

DD-R3 Recreation or temporary events on the foreshore

	Activity status: PER Temporary military training activities in the coastal marine area for defence purposes provided:	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **DIS**

	1. The activity does not take place in or involve damage or destruction in areas of shellfish beds, vegetated by mangroves, eel grass, saltmarsh or bird foraging areas during nesting season 2. Is not on or within any habitat identified as a significant value in Schedule 7 and does result or potentially result in harm to any threatened or at risk species identified in Schedule 7 3. The activity does not take place on sites of significance to tangata whenua, wāhi tapu or place of historic heritage; and 4. There is no risk to people's health and safety or enjoyment 5. Any change in water quality is not detectable within 24 hours after completion of the activity 6. Any structure is free from harmful aquatic organisms at the time of placement, and removed at the end of the exercise 7. At least two weeks advance written notice is given to Waikato Regional Council describing the activity and the area within which the activity is to occur 8. The activity does not exclude public use or access except where it is necessary to protect public health and safety or where public access would be in conflict with the Defence Act 1990 9. It does not hinder the operation requirements of emergency services including New Zealand Police, New Zealand Fire and Emergency Services and Ambulance Services 10. Any restrictions on public access are publicly notified in advance and notice placed on the site for the duration of the activity 11. The activity occurs for less than 30 days in any year 12. All equipment, materials or litter are removed on completion 13. Any disturbance is remedied or restored within 48 hours; and 14. An emergency spill plan is in place to address any unforeseen release of contaminants from equipment being used for the activity 15. The activity complies with the noise provisions of this plan.	

DD-R4 Livestock and horse riding access in the coastal marine area

	Activity status: PER The access of livestock and horses within and along the foreshore and seabed. <u>Where:</u> 1. Any visible disturbance to the substrate of the coastal marine area must be remedied or restored within 48 hours a. There is no access to estuarine areas or areas of salt marsh or mangroves or adjacent to a marine farm b. No grazing of intertidal vegetation is allowed to occur c. the livestock must be moved along at all times and not left unattended d. horses must be kept under control at all times e. horses must not be ridden or taken into bird breeding areas.	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **PR**

Discretionary Activities

DD-R5 **Disturbance activities not provided for by other rules**

	Activity status: DIS Disturbance activities in the coastal marine area not provided for by other rules. Where: 1. The activity is not within shellfish beds, vegetated areas, bird nesting areas during nesting season 2. The activity is not on or within any habitat identified as a significant value in Schedule 7 and does not result or potentially result in harm to any threatened or at risk species identified in Schedule 7; 3. The activity is does not take place on a site of significance to tangata whenua, wāhi tapu or place of historic heritage; and 4. No contaminants are discharged from vehicles.	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **NC**

Non-complying Activities

DD-R6 **Disturbance activities not otherwise provided for**

	Activity status: NC Disturbance of the coastal marine area that is not otherwise provided for.	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **N/A**

Prohibited Activities

DD-R7 **Military training activity involving explosions, detonations and other incendiary devices within significant areas**

	Activity status: PR Military training activity involving explosions, detonations and other incendiary devices within any: 1. Area of within any habitat identified as a significant value in Schedule 7 and does not result or potentially result in harm to any threatened or at risk species identified in Schedule 7 2. Saltmarsh, eel grass, mangroves, bird foraging areas during nesting season, or shellfish beds 3. Site or area of significance to Māori or wāhi tapu or place of historic heritage identified in Schedule 5 and 6.

DD-R8 **Livestock in the coastal marine area**

	Activity status: PR The presence of livestock in the coastal marine area unless permitted under Rule DD-R4.

B. Disturbance and removal

Permitted activities

DD-R9 Minor disturbance activities

	Activity status: PER Disturbance of sand, shell, shingle or other natural material in on, or under the foreshore or seabed in quantities of less than 10 cubic metres provided: 1. No sand, shell, shingle or natural material is removed other than for scientific sampling and research purposes 2. Any visible disturbance to the substrate of the coastal marine area is remedied or recontoured within 24 hours 3. It is not on or within any habitat identified as a significant value in Schedule 7 and does not result or potentially result in harm to any threatened or at risk species identified in Schedule 7 4. Any change in water quality will not be detectable within 24 hours after the disturbance 5. Equipment is removed upon completion 6. It does not occur on saltmarsh, eel grass, mangroves, bird foraging areas during nesting season, or shellfish beds 7. It is not within a site of significance to tangata whenua or wāhi tapu or place of historic heritage 8. There has not been a disturbance in the same location within 30 days.	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **CON**

Controlled Activities

DD-R10 Disturbance activities involving less than 1,000m^3

	Activity status: CON Disturbance of sand, shell, shingle or other natural material within the foreshore or seabed of more than 10 cubic metres and less than 1,000 cubic metres, and associated vehicle use. <u>Where:</u> 1. No sand, shell, shingle or other natural material is removed from the beach system 2. Any visible disturbance to the substrate of the coastal marine area is remedied or recontoured within 24 hours 3. Any change in water quality is not detectable 24 hours after the disturbance is made 4. Equipment or materials used at the site are removed on completion 5. The disturbance is not on saltmarsh, eel grass, mangroves, bird foraging areas during nesting season, or shellfish beds 6. Is not on or within any habitat identified as a significant value in Schedule 7 and does not result or potentially result in harm to any threatened or at risk species identified in Schedule 7	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **DIS**

	7. It is not within a site of significance to tangata whenua or wāhi tapu 8. No contaminants are discharged from vehicles 9. There has not been no disturbance of material in the same location within 30 days. **Control is reserved over** 1. The method, location, extent, frequency of disturbance. 2. The information and monitoring requirements. 3. The timing of the disturbance. 4. The location, extent and timing of vehicle use. 5. Cumulative effects. 6. The sensitivity of the receiving environment. 7. Noise.	

Discretionary Activities

DD-R11 Disturbance activities involving more than 1,000m^3

	Activity status: DIS Disturbance of the foreshore or seabed involving the removal of sand, shell, shingle or other material from the coastal marine area, in any 12 month period, involving more than 1,000 cubic metres. <u>Where:</u> 1. There is no disturbance to shellfish beds, vegetated areas, or bird foraging areas during nesting season, fish spawning grounds or any site of significance to tangata whenua 2. The activity is not on or within any habitat identified as a significant value in Schedule 7 and does not result or potentially result in harm to any threatened or at risk species identified in Schedule 7.	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **NC**

Non-complying Activities

DD-R12 Removal of sand, shell, shingle or other natural material in any high value area not otherwise provided for

	Activity status: NC Disturbance of the foreshore and seabed involving the removal of sand, shell, shingle or other natural material in any high value area within the coastal marine area that is not otherwise provided for.	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **N/A**

Prohibited Activities

DD-R13 Removal of material from areas of significant indigenous biodiversity

	Activity status: PR Disturbance of the foreshore or seabed in any Significant Indigenous Biodiversity A areas (as identified in Schedule 7), involving the removal of sand, shell, shingle or other natural material from the coastal marine area. *Advisory note:* 1. *This rule excludes maintenance dredging or disturbances resulting from the maintenance of infrastructure and structures or works for flood or erosion control, and improvements to existing road reserves.*	

DD-R14 Prospecting, exploration, mining or extraction activities in high value areas

	Activity status: PR Disturbance of the foreshore and seabed associated with prospecting, exploration, mining or extraction of petroleum products or natural materials in any high value area.	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **N/A**

DD-R15 Fracking in the coastal marine area

	Activity status: PR Fracking (hydraulic fracturing) activities in the coastal marine area, including: 1. Erection or placement of a structure in, on, under or over the foreshore or seabed. 2. Disturbance of the foreshore and seabed. 3. Deposition of any substance in, on or under the foreshore and seabed. 4. Discharge of contaminants in the coastal marine area.	

C. Flood protection and maintenance dredging

Permitted activities

DD-R16 Removal of sediment to unblock the mouth of waterways

	Activity status: PER Removal of sediment to unblock the mouth of waterways which empty into the coastal marine area, and associated vehicle use. Where: 1. The removal will not increase the channel width or depth dimensions that existed prior to the blockage 2. Land based sediments and silt deposited by the waterway is removed from the coastal marine area 3. Sand, shingle, shell or other natural material originating from the coastal marine area is used to replenish dunes within 500 metres of the waterway mouth and the material extracted matches the type and grain size of the destination dune 4. No contaminants are discharged to land or water from vehicle use.	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **CON**

DD-R17 Disturbance and removal to maintain existing drainage channel outlets, flood gate outlets and stopbanks

	Activity status: PER The disturbance and removal of material within the coastal marine area to maintain existing drainage channel outlets, flood gate outlets and stopbanks to service designated drainage districts, drainage schemes, river or flood protection schemes administered by local authorities. Where: 1. The disturbance only takes place in an existing drainage channel outlet, flood gate outlet or borrowpit and is limited to a 20 metre wide strip on one side of the drainage canal outlet, flood gate outlet or borrowpit 2. Any equipment or materials used at the site are removed on completion of the disturbance 3. It is not on or within any habitat identified as a significant value in Schedule 7 and does not result or potentially result in harm to any threatened or at risk species identified in Schedule 7 4. No sand, shell, shingle or other natural material is removed from the coastal marine area, other than material taken from borrowpits to maintain stopbanks.	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **CON**

Controlled Activities

DD-R18 Maintenance dredging

	Activity status: CON Maintenance dredging, and associated vehicle use, involving the removal of sand, shingle, shell or other natural material from the coastal marine area. Where: 1. No contaminants are discharged to land or water from vehicle use 2. Any visible change in water quality is not detectable 48 hours after the activity 3. It is not on or within any habitat identified as a significant value in Schedule 7 and does not result or potentially result in harm to any threatened or at risk species identified in Schedule 7. **Control is reserved over:** 1. Frequency, timing and location 2. Method of dredging 3. The volume of dredged material 4. Location and extent of the disturbance 5. Location and method of disposal of dredged material 6. The location, extent and timing of vehicle use 7. Cumulative effects 8. Information and monitoring 9. The location, extent and timing of vehicle use	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **DIS**

	10. Noise.	

Discretionary Activities

DD-R19 Removal of sediment from the mouth of waterways

	Activity status: DIS The removal of sediment from the mouth of waterways which empty into the coastal marine area that does not comply with Rule DD-16 provided the removal: 1. Is necessary to avoid flood hazard risk or to allow for fish migration 2. Does not remove any sand, shingle, shell or other natural marine material except where it is used to replenish dunes within 500 metres of the waterway mouth and the material extracted matches the type and grain size of the destination dune 3. Does not disturb shellfish beds, vegetated areas, bird foraging areas during nesting season, fish spawning grounds or any site of significance to tangata whenua 4. It is not on or within any habitat identified as a significant value in Schedule 7 and does not result or potentially result in harm to any threatened or at risk species identified in Schedule 7.	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **NC**

Non-complying Activities

DD-R20 Disturbance activity not otherwise provided for

	Activity status: NC Disturbance or removal sand, shingle, shell or other natural material that is not otherwise provided for.	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **N/A**

D. Deposition or disposal of material

Permitted activities

DD-R21 Deposition of small quantities of natural material

	Activity status: PER Deposition of sand, shell, shingle or natural material in on, or under the foreshore or seabed, in quantities of less than 100 cubic metres provided: 1. Any visible disturbance to the substrate of the coastal marine area is remedied or recontoured within 24 hours 2. Any change in water quality will not be detectable within 24 hours after the deposit 3. Equipment used at the site is removed on completion 4. The deposit does not contain any harmful aquatic organisms 5. The deposit is not on saltmarsh, eel grass, mangroves, bird foraging areas during nesting season, or shellfish beds	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **CON**

	6. There has not been a deposit of natural material in the same location within 30 days 7. It is not on or within any habitat identified as a significant value in Schedule 7 and does not result or potentially result in harm to any threatened or at risk species identified in Schedule 7 8. The deposit is not within a site of significance to tangata whenua, wāhi tapu or place of historic heritage 9. Does not obstruct coastal processes.	

Controlled Activities

DD-R22 Beach renourishment

	Activity status: CON Deposition of any sand or shell onto the foreshore or seabed for beach nourishment and associated vehicle use: <u>Where:</u> 1. The beach renourishment activity is part of an approved coast or shoreline management plan 2. The material does not contain any contaminants or harmful aquatic organisms 3. There is only one deposition in any 12 month period 4. The deposition is no more than 10,000 cubic metres 5. No contaminants are discharged to land or water from vehicle use.	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **DIS**

DD-R23 Deposition of medium quantities of natural material

	Activity status: CON Deposit of sand, shell, shingle or other natural material, in, on, or under the foreshore or seabed in quantities of more than 100 cubic metres and less than 1,000 cubic metres, and associated vehicle use. <u>Where:</u> 1. No sand, shell, shingle or other natural material is removed from the beach system 2. Any visible disturbance to the substrate of the coastal marine area is remedied or recontoured within 24 hours 3. Any change in water quality is not detectable 24 hours after the deposit is made 4. Any equipment or materials used at the site are removed on completion 5. The deposit is not on saltmarsh, eel grass, mangroves, bird foraging areas during nesting season, or shellfish beds 6. It is not on or within any habitat identified as a significant value in Schedule 7 and does not result or potentially result in harm to any threatened or at risk species identified in Schedule 7 7. The disturbance is not within a site of significance to tangata whenua or wāhi tapu 8. No contaminants are discharged from any vehicles 9. There has not been a deposit of material in the same location within 30 days 10. The activity does not obstruct normal coastal processes. **Control is reserved over:** 1. The information and monitoring requirements 2. The location, extent and frequency of material to be deposited 3. The method and timing of the deposit 4. The frequency of any deposit 5. The particle size and composition of the deposition 6. The location, extent and timing of vehicle use 7. Cumulative effects 8. The sensitivity of the receiving environment 9. Noise.	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **DIS**

Discretionary Activities

DD-R24 Deposition of sand, shingle, shell or other natural material

	Activity status: DIS Deposit of sand, shingle, shell or other natural material onto the foreshore and seabed, in any 12 month period. <u>Where:</u> 1. It does not disturb saltmarsh, eel grass, mangroves, bird foraging areas during nesting season, or shellfish beds	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **NC**

	2. It is not on or within any habitat identified as a significant value in Schedule 7 and does not result or potentially result in harm to any threatened or at risk species identified in Schedule 7 3. The material to be deposited does not contain any contaminants, or harmful aquatic organisms 4. The activity is not within SIB-A area for the Firth of Thames RAMSAR site as identified in Schedule 7, or a site of significance to tangata whenua; and 5. The activity does not obstruct normal coastal processes.	

Non-complying Activities

DD-R25 Deposition of natural material

	Activity status: NC Deposit of sand, shingle, shell or other natural material onto the foreshore and seabed that is not otherwise provided for.	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **N/C**

Prohibited Activities

DD-R26 Deposition of hazardous substance material in the coastal marine area

	Activity status: PR Deposition of any material into the coastal marine area that contains hazardous substances not provided for in clause 4(2) of the Resource Management (Marine Pollution) Regulations 1998.

E. Reclamation and removal of existing reclamations

Restricted Discretionary Activities

DD-R27 Removal of reclamations for specified purposes

	Activity status: RD The removal of reclamations in the coastal marine area, where the removal is for the purpose of any of the following: 1. Restoration of natural character and resources of the coastal marine area 2. Providing for public open space 3. Providing for enhanced public walking access to, and along, the coastal marine area. **Discretion is restricted to:** 1. Measures to restore the natural character or resources of the coastal marine area; and to avoid, remedy or mitigate adverse effects on historic heritage, or cultural values 2. Measures to avoid, remedy or mitigate the discharge of sediment to water 3. Measures to avoid, remedy or mitigate erosion, instability or scour to land, the foreshore or seabed as a result of the activity	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **NC**

	4. The disposal site and management of the material removed from the reclamation 5. Timing and duration of works associated with the activity 6. Measures to avoid, remedy of mitigate adverse effects on aquatic and terrestrial ecosystems in the coastal environment, including wetlands 7. Noise levels and management resulting from the activity 8. Measures to minimise the disturbance of the foreshore and seabed 9. Measures to avoid the discharge of contaminants (other than sediment) resulting from or associated with the activity 10. Monitoring and information requirements.	

Discretionary Activities

DD-R28 Reclamation in development areas

	Activity status: DIS Reclamation within the Te Ariki Tahi (Sugarloaf) Wharf or Kōpū Marine Precinct development areas. Where: 1. The reclaimed area is designed and maintained to a standard to withstand coastal processes and changes in sea levels 2. The activity will not result in the release of contaminants.	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **NC**

DD-R29 Removal of reclamations resulting in inundation

	Activity status: DIS Removal of any existing reclamation that will result in inundation beyond the declaimed area, by seawater or does not comply with Rule DD-R27. Where: 1. The reclaimed area is designed and maintained to a standard to withstand coastal processes and changes in sea levels 2. The activity will not result in the release of contaminants.	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **NC**

Non-complying Activities

DD-R30 Reclamation associated with regionally significant infrastructure in areas of significant indigenous biodiversity or outstanding natural character

	Activity status: NC Reclamation or drainage of the foreshore or seabed in the coastal marine area in a Significant Indigenous Biodiversity Area A (as identified in Schedule 7) or an area of Outstanding Natural Character (as identified in Schedule 7). Where: The activity is associated with: 1. The operation, maintenance and protection of existing and new regionally significant infrastructure	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **PR**

	2. Existing marinas and other marine-related service facilities; or 3. Existing and new electricity generation facilities 4. The protection, restoration or rehabilitation of the biodiversity or natural character values associated with such areas 5. The provision of safe public walking access to, within or adjacent to the coastal marine area 6. The provision of loading and unloading access to offshore islands.	

DD-R31 Reclamation, removal of reclamations or drainage of the foreshore or seabed

	Activity status: NC Reclamation, removal of existing reclamations or drainage of the foreshore or seabed not prohibited by either Rule DD-R32 or Rule DD-R33 of this Plan or otherwise provided for.	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **N/A**

Prohibited Activities

DD-R32 Reclamation or drainage of the foreshore or seabed for specified purposes

	Activity status: PR Reclamation or drainage of the foreshore or sea-bed in the coastal marine area, where the reclamation is for <u>any</u> of the following purposes: 1. Disposal of dredged material as the primary purpose of the reclamation 2. Extension to or creation of farmland, playing fields, urban, and industrial areas, except for marine-related servicing facilities and storage 3. Carparks as the primary purpose of the reclamation 4. Rubbish disposal, including industrial, horticultural, farm and household; is a prohibited activity. <u>*Advisory note:*</u> *1. The creation of walkways for public access to and along the coastal marine area is excluded from this rule.*

DD-R33 Reclamation or drainage of the foreshore or seabed in areas of significant indigenous biodiversity or outstanding natural character

	Activity status: PR Reclamation or drainage of the foreshore or seabed in the coastal marine area in an Indigenous Biological Diversity Area A (as identified in Schedule 7), or an area of Outstanding Natural Character (as identified in Schedule 4), unless provided for by another rule in this Plan.

DD-R34 Deposition of any material in the coastal marine area other than cleanfill, in a reclamation or in a retaining wall

	Activity status: PR Deposition of any material in the coastal marine area other than cleanfill, in a reclamation or in a retaining wall associated with a declamation that will become a structure in the coastal marine area.

10 HH – Historic heritage | Taonga onamata

Overview

Heritage items and sites in the coastal marine area include shipwrecks, archaeological sites and areas of cultural importance to tangata whenua. Section 6(f) of the RMA identifies "the protection of historic heritage from inappropriate subdivision, use, and development" as a matter of national importance.

Historic heritage values can be directly threatened through modification, damage or destruction associated with use and development in the coastal marine area and on adjoining land. Damage can also occur from natural hazards and sea level rise.

Under the Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga Act 2014 it is unlawful to destroy, damage or modify an archaeological site (regardless of whether the site is identified in the District Plan or not) without obtaining an archaeological authority from Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga (HNZPT) before you start work. An archaeological authority is required in addition to any resource consents required from Council.

An archaeological site is defined in this act as any place in New Zealand (including wāhi tapu, structures or shipwrecks) that was associated with pre-1900 human activity, where there is evidence relating to the history of New Zealand that can be investigated using archaeological methods.

This chapter contains provisions that seek to protect the sites, and to manage activities on, or in proximity to the sites to ensure that the effects of these activities can be assessed. Historic heritage also includes Sites and Areas of Significance to Māori, which is addressed in a separate chapter to this Plan.

Cross references to other relevant plan provisions

Other chapters contain provisions for activities that may be subject to natural hazards, these include:

- **Deposition and Disturbance DD** – in relation to effects of activities on Historic Heritage.
- **Public access and recreation PA** – in relation to access to heritage sites and protecting sites from public access and recreational activity
- **Structures STR** – in relation to location, construction, upgrading and maintenance of structures.
- **Sites and Areas of Significance to Māori SASM** – in relation areas of significance to tangata whenua.

Objectives

HH-O1 Historic heritage values

Protect the identity and integrity of historic heritage values in the coastal marine area.

Policies

HH-P1 Protection of historic heritage values and resources

Protect historic heritage resources in the coastal marine area, from inappropriate use and development.

In determining whether or not activities are appropriate, regard shall be had to the following:

1. Duration, scale and extent of effects on historic heritage archaeological, architectural, cultural, historic, scientific and technological values of the site
2. Whether the relationships between elements within a site and relationships between sites or areas of historic and cultural heritage to other sites or areas of historic and cultural heritage will be maintained
3. The loss of value or integrity of historic places, sites or areas through lack of appropriate conservation, maintenance and management
4. Effects of activities on the surroundings associated with historic heritage places and areas
5. Recognising the following as being significant adverse effects to be avoided:
    a. the destruction of the physical elements of historic heritage
    b. relocation of the physical elements of historic heritage
    c. alterations and additions to the form and appearance of the physical elements of historic heritage
    d. loss of context to the surroundings of historic heritage, taking into account the scale of any proposal.
6. Recognising that despite (5), there are not likely to be significant adverse effects if:
    a. the historic heritage has already been irreparably damaged as assessed by a suitably qualified and experienced heritage professional and there are significant health and safety or navigational safety risks if it were to remain, or
    b. alterations, additions, repair or maintenance will not result in the loss, or significant degradation of, any values contributing to it being historic heritage, and are being undertaken under authority of a heritage management agency.

HH-P2 Identification of cultural historic heritage overlays

Where Māori cultural historic heritage sites cannot be identified to avoid serious offence to tikanga Māori, or to avoid the disclosure of the location of wāhi tapu, provide for their protection through the identification of cultural overlays, to be considered as part of consent application processes.

HH-P3 Effects of use or development

Consider the following matters when making decisions on any use or development that may have an adverse effect on historic heritage resources in the coastal marine area:

1. The significance and values of the historic heritage site, including identification in:
    a. Schedules 5A-C – Historic heritage, and
    b. Schedule 6 – Sites of significance to Māori (SNAs) Silent files and the application of Policy HH-P2.
2. Integrated management of heritage values in collaboration with relevant councils, heritage agencies, iwi authorities and kaitiaki.
3. How matters of significance to Māori are managed in accordance with the relevant Sites and Areas of Significance to Māori chapter policies.

HH-P4 Enhance historic heritage and historic heritage resources

Encourage the restoration and enhancement of historic heritage values, by allowing the maintenance, repair or restoration of identified historic heritage sites.

HH-P5 Undiscovered sites

Recognise that data on heritage resources may be incomplete.

HH-P6 Requirements of activities on or adjacent to historic heritage resources

Manage activities that potentially affect the identity and integrity of historic heritage by ensuring that:

1. Where activities affect or are directly adjacent to discrete physical structures identified in the register (Schedule 5a) of historic heritage – ensure activities protect the historic heritage values of those structures
2. Where activities are within 100m of and potentially affecting historic sites of undefined extent or shipwrecks (Schedule 5 Band C or cultural areas identified in Schedule 6), to require that appropriate heritage and cultural assessments demonstrate how this will be achieved
3. Mana whenua tikanga practices can occur on culturally significant sites.

HH-P7 Discovery protocol

Ensure that in the event that any activity discovers or disturbs any:

1. Human remains and kōiwi
2. Archaeological site including historic shipwrecks
3. Māori cultural artefact/taonga tuturu
4. Protected New Zealand object as defined in the Protected Objects Act 1975 (including any fossil or sub-fossil)

the person responsible/consent holder will:

1. Cease works and secure the site
2. Inform relevant authorities and parties of the discovery
3. Wait for and enable relevant authorities' inspection of the site
4. Only recommence work when the actions relevant to the type of discovery have been completed.

Rules

Permitted Activities

HH-R1 **Investigation, repair, maintenance and mana whenua tikanga practices**

	Activity status: PER Investigation, repair or maintenance or mana whenua tikanga practices on or adjacent to historic heritage sites that is undertaken by a heritage authority. Where: 1. There is no loss, or significant degradation of, any values contributing to the site being identified as historic heritage, and either: a. the activity is being undertaken by a heritage authority, or b. the activity is being undertaken on a cultural heritage site by mana whenua.	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **DIS**

Discretionary Activities

HH-R2 **Activities on or adjacent to historic heritage resources**

	Activity status: DIS Any disturbance of foreshore or seabed, deposition, erection of structures or reclamation not permitted by Rule HH-R1 that could potentially damage or disturb an identified item or site of historic heritage in the CMA, that is located: 1. On or immediately adjacent to heritage resources in Schedule 5A (physically discrete structures); or 2. In the CMA within 100m of heritage in Schedule 5B; or 3. Within cultural areas of significance identified in Schedule 6 4. Within 100m of the estimated location of a known shipwreck listed in table Schedule 5C.	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **N/A**

11 NATC – Natural character | Āhua tūturu

Overview

Natural character describes the degree of naturalness in an area, based on the natural elements, patterns and processes, and the experiential attributes of the coastal marine area. These combine to create an overall natural character that is highest where there is least human induced modification.

The most exceptional areas of natural character have been identified as outstanding, and these require protection as a matter of national importance. However, even in areas with low overall natural character, components of high natural character may remain, and the protection of this from inappropriate development is also required.

Cross references to other relevant plan provisions

Other chapters contain provisions to consider and address effects on natural character values, these include:

- **Aquaculture AQA** – in relation to new aquaculture or existing aquaculture in areas of outstanding natural character
- **Disturbance and Deposition DD** – in relation to the deposition or removal of sediment and reclamation activities that may effect natural character
- **Ecosystems and Indigenous Biodiversity ECO** – in relation to the marine habitats and biodiversity components of natural character
- **Structures STR** – in relation to structures in areas with outstanding, very high or high natural character.

Objectives

NATC-O1 Preserve natural character

The natural character of the coastal marine area is preserved by protecting it from inappropriate use and development.

NATC-O1 Restore natural character

Restore or rehabilitate the natural character of the coastal environment where appropriate.

Policies

NATC-P1 Outstanding natural character

Avoid adverse effects of activities on the values and characteristics identified in Schedule 4 that contribute to the natural values of areas of Outstanding Natural Character.

NATC-P2 Other natural character

Avoid significant adverse effects of activities on the values and characteristics that contribute to natural character, and avoid, remedy or mitigate other adverse effects on natural character, in all areas of the CMA that are not areas of Outstanding Natural Character.

NATC-P3 Transient or minor adverse effects on natural character

Recognise that transient or minor adverse effects on the values and characteristics that contribute to Outstanding Natural Character may be acceptable.

NATC-P4 Restoration of natural character

Promote the restoration or rehabilitation of natural character values and characteristics of the coastal environment, particularly in relation to estuaries, coastal indigenous vegetation and habitats, ecological corridors, improving coastal water quality and reducing the adverse effects of sediment on sensitive coastal receiving environments.

Rules

Advisory note:

1. *This chapter contains no rules. The objectives and policies for Natural Character are to be given effect to through the relevant activity rules of the plan.*

12 NFL – Natural features and landscapes | Ngā tirohanga whenua

Overview

Landscape is the cumulative expression of natural and cultural features, patterns and processes in a geographical area, including human perceptions and associations. It includes natural science, heritage, cultural, aesthetic, and associative values. Tangata whenua values are a key component of the associative values.

Landscapes are larger areas that are perceived as a whole, which can include a number of features within them. Landscapes can be either experienced from within or seen as the whole of the outlook.

Natural features are discrete elements within a landscape, which are generally experienced from outside the features' boundaries. Features display integrity as a whole element and can often be clearly distinguished from the surrounding landscape, which forms the context around them. Small landscapes can nest within larger landscapes. Both landscape and feature are scale dependent.

Schedule 3 to the Plan identifies significant Natural Features and Landscapes (Seascapes) shown as an overlay in the planning maps.

This section addresses landscape values seaward of mean high water springs, including estuaries and harbours, river mouths and coastal waters. The values recognised in this topic are described as Seascapes to differentiate them from landward landscape values.

Objectives

NFL-O1 Protect Natural Features and Landscapes

The natural features and landscapes, including seascapes, of the coastal marine area are protected from inappropriate use and development.

Policies

NFL-P1 Outstanding natural features and landscapes

Avoid adverse effects of activities on the values and characteristics identified in Schedule 3 that contribute to Outstanding Natural Features and Landscapes in the coastal marine area.

NFL-P2 Other natural features and landscapes

Avoid significant adverse effects of activities on the values and characteristics that contribute to natural features and landscapes, and avoid, remedy or mitigate other adverse effects on natural features and landscapes, in all areas of the CMA that are not Outstanding Natural Features and Landscapes.

NFL-P3 Transient or minor adverse effects on natural features and landscapes

Recognise that transient or minor adverse effects on the values and characteristics that contribute to Outstanding Natural Features and Landscapes may be acceptable.

NFL-P4 Significant geological features

Protect the significant geological features identified in Schedule 3A (Significant Geological Features) by:

1. Avoiding significant adverse effects of use and development on significant geological features
2. Avoiding, remedying or mitigating other adverse effects of activities on significant geological features.

NFL-P5 Amenity values

Maintain or enhance qualities and characteristics of areas and features valued for their contribution to amenity, with particular regard given to:

1. Avoiding a sense of encroachment or domination of built form along the coastal edge
2. Avoiding forms and location of development that effectively privatise the coastal edge
3. Recognising the contribution that open space makes to amenity values
4. Recognising that some areas derive their particular character and amenity value from existing structures, modifications or activities
5. Managing land use to address potential adverse effects of climate change induced weather variability and sea level rise on amenity
6. Encouraging design of new structures and development to enhance existing amenity values.

Rules

Advisory note:

1. *This chapter contains no rules. The objective and policies for Natural Features and Landscapes are to be give effect to through the relevant activity rules of the plan.*

13 NH – Natural hazards | Ngā mōrearea ao tūroa

Overview

Activities in the coastal marine area need to consider adaptation to climate change effects, including rising sea levels within the Waikato region projected over at least 100-year timeframe or life expectancy of structure.

The NZCPS and RPS policy direction is to discourage hard protection structures, but to also recognise that they may be appropriate as an interim step in areas of significant existing development or to protect nationally or regionally significant infrastructure, while transition to a long term more sustainable option is pursued and provided the wider effects on the environment, social and cultural values and adjacent uses are addressed. Long term community adaptive management plans are required under the RPS for at risk areas to identify trigger levels where management choices need to be adjusted as part of the transition to more sustainable approaches, including consideration of managed retreat. The focus of policy is on risk management (reducing risk to acceptable) and encouraging adaptation.

Cross references to other relevant plan provisions

Other chapters contain provisions for activities that may be subject to natural hazards, these include:

- **Disturbance and Deposition DD** – in relation to encouraging soft protection measures, discouraging hard protection structures and in relation to the placement of structures.
- **Ecosystems and Indigenous Biodiversity ECO** – in relation to protecting ability of ecosystems to migrate in response to natural hazard challenges
- **Integrated Management INT** – in relation to adaptation to climate change and sea level rise
- **Public access and recreation PA** – in relation to public access to areas affected by natural hazards
- **Structures STR** – in relation to the location, construction, upgrading and maintenance of structures.

Objectives

NH-O1 Natural hazard risk management

Activities and development avoid increasing the risks of adverse effects of coastal hazards, and are able to adapt to changing risks due to climate change, resulting in resilient communities.

NH-O2 Natural defences promoted

Natural defences against coastal hazards are promoted over hard protection structures as a longer term sustainable approach.

Policies

NH-P1 Activities subject to coastal hazards

Use and development, including hard protection structures, in areas subject to coastal hazard risk is to be avoided except where all of the following criteria are met:

1. The activity avoids increasing the risk of social (including cultural), environmental and economic harm from coastal hazards
2. The hazard risk to the development and residual hazard risk after hazard mitigation measures, assessed using a risk-based approach, is low
3. The development does not cause or exacerbate natural hazards in other areas
4. Adverse effects on natural coastal processes are avoided, remedied, or mitigated
5. Natural cycles of erosion and accretion and the potential for natural features to fluctuate in position over time, including movements due to climate change and sea level rise over at least the next 100 years, are taken into account.

NH-P2 Use of natural features and nonstructural methods to protect areas from natural hazard risk

Encourage the use of natural features and soft protection measures that provide a buffer against natural hazards and avoid use of hard protection structures to manage natural hazards risk.

NH-P3 Discourage hard protection structures

Discourage the use of new or extended hard protection structures unless all of the following matters are met:

1. They are the only practical means to protect existing regionally significant infrastructure or are necessary to enable ongoing physical access where retreat is not an option, or there are exceptional circumstances warranting the need for a hard protection structure
2. The works form part of a long-term adaptive management strategy, which represents the best practicable option for the future which includes consideration of:
    a. an assessment of the risks to activities due to natural hazards including the effects of climate change over at least 100-year time frame
    b. an assessment of options and trigger points where a change in response may be appropriate to reduce long term risk
    c. the form and location of any hard structure to ensure it is designed to minimise adverse effects on coastal processes
    d. the public and environmental costs and benefits of any structure protecting private property
    e. whether the structure will result in the creation or exacerbation of hazard risk to adjoining activities.
3. Consideration of and provision for environmental values is given, including in relation to the inland migration of habitats
4. Provision for social and cultural values including public access and recreation is made.

NH-P4 Location of hard protection structures

Hard protection structures to protect private assets should not be located on public land unless there is significant public or environmental benefit in doing so, and the criteria in Policy NH-P3 are met.

NH-P5 Adaptation to risks of coastal hazards

Encourage and provide for the relocation of structures in the coastal marine area adversely affected by natural hazards provided that:

1. The risk to the structure from coastal hazards is reduced to an acceptable level
2. The structure is not used for residential purposes
3. Landward migration of habitats is not precluded
4. The hazard risk to other structures, natural processes or the environment is not increased.

NH-P6 Rebuilding of structures adversely affected by natural hazards

Existing ~~s~~structures in the coastal marine area materially damaged or destroyed by a natural hazard event may only be re-built if they avoid increasing the risk of social (including cultural), environmental and economic harm from natural hazards.

NH-P7 Extension of hard protection structures adversely affected by natural hazards

Hard protection structures in the coastal marine area that require extension in footprint or height in order to maintain intended function will be treated as requiring a new resource consent.

Advisory note:

1. *Hard protection structures (seawalls) initially constructed landward of MHWS that become located in the CMA as a result of sea level rise will be treated as new seawalls.*

NH-P8 Relocation of regionally significant infrastructure and other structures

Provide for the relocation of regionally significant infrastructure and structures other than hard protection structures that have a functional need to locate in the CMA ~~that~~ need to relocate as a consequence of sea level rise to reduce natural hazard risk to an acceptable level.

NH-P9 Operation of flood protection and river drainage schemes in hazard risk areas

Provide for the use, maintenance and ongoing operation of existing catchment-based flood and erosion hazard risk management activities which manage the hazard risk to people, property, infrastructure, and communities that meet the criteria in Policies NH-P1, NH-P3.

NH-P10 Buffering coastal hazards

Recognise the role of transitional environments between land and sea in buffering adverse effects of storm surges and changes in sea level.

NH-P11 Effects of authorised hard protection structures

Require hard protection works involving the placement of any material, objects or structures to be designed and located to avoid increasing the risk of social (including cultural), environmental and economic harm from coastal hazards, including addressing all of the following matters:

1. The location of structures as far landward as possible to retain as much natural beach buffer as possible
2. Any likely increase in the coastal hazard, including increased rates of erosion, accretion, subsidence or slippage
3. Undermining of the foundations at the base of the structure
4. Erosion in front of, behind or around the ends or down-drift of the structure
5. Settlement or loss of foundation material

6. Movement or dislodgement of individual structural elements
7. Offshore or long-shore loss of sediment from the immediate vicinity
8. Long-term adverse visual effects on coastal landscape and amenity values
9. Effects on public access
10. Avoiding use of materials containing toxic or hazardous substances.

Rules

Advisory note:

1. *This chapter contains no rules. The objective and policies for Natural Hazards are to be given effect to through the relevant activity rules of the plan. See in particular Structures (STR) and Disturbances (DD).*

14 SMA – Ngā whenua tapu o ngā iwi | Sites and areas of significance to Māori | Āhua tūturu

Overview

Sites and areas of significance to Māori (SMAs) include sites, places and features of historical, cultural and/or spiritual significance to tangata whenua. In the coastal marine area, they may include seascape features, reefs and toka, wāhi tapu, urupā, tauranga waka (canoe landing sites), wetlands (ngā repo), mahinga kai (food gathering areas) and taonga. Taonga, or treasure, is a term that carries deep spiritual meaning and can include things that cannot be seen or touched, such the mauri or wairua of a particular place or area. In other instances, taonga may be kaimoana species prized by a particular iwi or hapū associated with that place.

This chapter contains provisions to protect sites and areas of significance to Māori, and to manage activities within, or in proximity to such sites and areas, to ensure that the effects of these activities are assessed.

Sites and areas of significance to Māori carry deep levels of meaning and associations for tangata whenua. They provide a tangible connection to their whenua (land), significant historical events, and ancestral connection. Even where such sites no longer exist physically, their memory remains an important part of the cultural landscape. Sites identified in Schedule 6 are not necessarily all sites of significance to Māori in the coastal marine area, and have been identified through Treaty settlement and iwi planning documents. Some important sites have a "silent file" status and are not identified in Schedule 6 to this Plan.

Recognising and providing for the relationship of Māori and their culture and traditions with their ancestral lands, water, sites, wāhi tapu and other tāonga, is a matter of national importance under the Resource Management Act. Only Māori can identify their taonga (and other cultural and traditional values).

It is expected that recognition will be given to the particular significance and meaning that taonga (including areas, places, landscapes and resources) can have to tangata whenua through their historical and ongoing associations with an area.

The relationship of tangata whenua with their rohe should be maintained or enhanced through the protection, maintenance or enhancement of Māori cultural landscapes. Māori cultural landscapes are less about the physical appearance of the land and more about the associations of tangata whenua with the land, particularly within their rohe. To Māori the physical landscape is inseparable from the associated cultural narratives about tūpuna, events, occupations and cultural practices.

The objectives and policies in this chapter are relevant to the assessment of any resource consent that may affect sites and areas of cultural significance to Māori, as set out in this chapter.

Cross references to other relevant plan provisions

Other chapters contain provisions relevant to sites and areas of significance to Māori, including:

- **Disturbance and Deposition DD** – in relation to disturbing the foreshore and seabed in the proximity of areas and site of significance, or avoiding these areas.
- **Energy and Infrastructure EI** – in relation to the establishment of renewable energy generation activities and regionally significant infrastructure within or adjacent to identified sites or areas of significance are to be avoided.
- **Historic Heritage HH** – many historic heritage scheduled sites and areas are of significance to Māori in the CMA. Therefore, when rules relating to sites and areas of significance to Māori are applicable for a particular activity, it is likely that rules relating to historic heritage sites will also be applicable and the provisions of both chapters should be assessed.
- **Structures STR** – in relation to establishing, using, and maintaining structures in any area which may contain sites or areas of significance to Māori.
- All other **chapters** in this plan.

Objectives

SMA-O1 Sites and areas of significance to Māori

Sites and areas of significance to Māori are recognised, protected and maintained.

SMA-O2 Relationship of tangata whenua with sites and areas of significance

The relationship of tangata whenua with their sites and areas of significance in the coastal marine area is recognised, strengthened and protected.

SMA-O3 Restoration and enhancement of areas of cultural significance to Māori

The restoration, rehabilitation or enhancement of areas of cultural significance, including significant cultural seascapes and culturally sensitive coastal marine areas, mahinga mātaitai, and the mauri of coastal waters, where customary activities or the ability to collect healthy kaimoana are restricted or compromised.

Policies

SMA-P1 Relationship of tangata whenua with their sites, wāhi tapu and other taonga

Recognise and provide for the relationship of tangata whenua and their culture and traditions with their ancestral lands, waters, sites, wāhi tapu and other taonga and their role as kaitiaki in the coastal marine area.

SMA-P2 Managing activities in scheduled sites and areas of significance to Māori

Ensure activities that occur on, or adjacent to sites and areas of significance to Māori, including those identified in Schedule 6, do not compromise the cultural, spiritual or heritage values, interests or associations of importance to tangata whenua.

SMA-P3 Access for customary activities

Maintain and enhance tangata whenua access to sites of cultural significance in order to undertake customary activities, including mahinga kai.

SMA-P4 Restricting use and access for customary activities

Avoid use and development which would restrict the access of tangata whenua to sites used for cultural practices, gathering kaimoana and areas of cultural significance in the common marine and coastal area, unless:

1. The restriction is consistent with one the matters listed in Policy PAR-P3, or
2. Alternative access can specifically be provided for, or
3. The effects of the loss of access can be adequately remedied or mitigated.

SMA-P5 Identifying sites and areas of significance to Māori

Recognise the sensitivity associated with identifying sites, areas and taonga of significance to Māori where information may be retained and managed by tangata whenua.

SMA-P6 Assessment of sites and areas of significance to Māori

Identify other sites and areas of significance to Māori using the assessment criteria in Table 10-2: Māori culture and traditions assessment criteria of the RPS, including:

Mauri	Ko te mauri me te mana o te wāhi, te taonga rānei, e ngākaunuitia ana e te Māori. The mauri (for example life force) and mana (for example prestige) of the place or resource holds special significance to Māori.
Wāhi tapu	Ko tērā wāhi, taonga rānei he wāhi tapu, arā, he tino whakahirahira ki ngā tikanga, ki ngā puri mahara, ki te taha wairua hoki o te Māori. The place or resource is a wāhi tapu of special, cultural, historic and or spiritual importance to Māori.
Kōrero-o-mua historical	Ko tērā wāhi e ngākaunuitia ana e te Māori ki roto i ōna kōrero-o-mua me ōna tikanga. The place has special historical and cultural significance to Māori.
Rawa tūturu customary resources	He wāhi tērā e kawea ai ngā rawa tūturu a te Māori. The place provides important customary resources for Māori
Hiahiatanga tūturu customary needs	He wāhi tērā e pupuru nei i ngā tikanga ahurea, wairua hoki o te Māori. The place or resource is a venue or repository for Māori cultural practices and spiritual values.
Whakaaronui o te wa contemporary esteem	He wāhi rongonui tērā ki ngā Māori, arā, he wāhi whakaahuru, he wāhi whakawaihanga, he wāhi tuku mātauranga rānei. The place has special amenity, architectural or educational significance to Māori.

Rules

Advisory note:

1. *This chapter contains no rules. The objectives and policies for Ngā whenua tapu o ngā iwi - Sites and areas of significance to Māori - are to be given effect to through the relevant activity rules of the plan.*

15 MAR – Marinas | Ngā tumu herenga waka

Overview |

Marinas provide an efficient and compact way to berth vessels, and are closely integrated with landward marine facilities, infrastructure and access.

Marinas are located in Thames, Tairua, Whitianga, and Whangamatā. As the coastal marine area is public space, the location of any new marina would need to consider effects on public values such as, natural character, landscape, biodiversity, public access, navigational safety, cultural and amenity values, as well as impacts on natural processes and water quality.

Marinas involve comprehensive developments and therefore cut across a range of environmental topics including, structures, discharges, dredging and deposition, reclamations. This chapter seeks to address these effects within this chapter.

Cross references to other relevant plan provisions

Other coastal plan chapters contain provisions that may also be relevant to marinas, these include:

- **Biosecurity BIO** – in relation to the management and control of marine pets and harmful aquatic organisms.
- **Discharges DIS** – in relation to marina construction and operational activities.
- **Disturbances and deposition DD** – in relation to capital dredging, maintenance dredging or reclamation activities for existing or new marina developments.
- **Ecosystems and Indigenous Biodiversity ECO** – in relation to protecting biodiversity, including seabirds and marine mammals.
- **Public access and recreation PA** – in relation to enabling or restricting public access associated with disturbance or deposition activities.
- **Structures STR** – in relation to marina structures, such as piling, jetties and pontoons and the occupation of space in the coastal marine area.

Objectives

MAR-01 Marinas

Locate and manage marinas to ensure safe and efficient use of the coastal marine area and to provide for integrated management with adjoining landward support facilities, while protecting natural and public values.

Policies

MAR-P1 Existing Marina Areas

Enable activities related to the use and operation of marinas, within existing Marina Areas to ensure that:

1. the space available within the Marina Area is used safely and efficiently

2. any activities that are not directly related to the Marina Area are discouraged
3. all structures are designed, maintained and managed to a standard that ensures structural integrity is maintained at all times
4. any biosecurity risk is managed to minimise the risk of introduction of spread of harmful aquatic organisms
5. any discharge into the coastal marine area from a vessel or from landward areas, does not cause the water quality standards in Schedule 9 or the Resource Management (Marine Pollution) Regulations 1998 to be contravened
6. any dredged material is to be used for beach nourishment purposes, unless considered unsuitable for the locality
7. management services provided at the Marina site must include as a minimum: rubbish disposal facilities, sewage pump out facilities, equipment for managing oil, diesel or refuelling discharges, bunding and procedures to ensure any residues or discharges from vessel maintenance do not enter the coastal marine area.

MAR-P2 Location for a New Marina Area or extension to an existing Marina Area

Assess the appropriateness of a location for a new Marina Area or an extension to an existing Marina Area, in accordance with the following criteria:

1. there is a strong integration between land and coastal marine areas, with sufficient space for servicing marina-related activities
2. any potential navigational safety hazards and any adverse effects on existing uses, including vessel or recreational access, can be avoided or mitigated
3. in the context of the location, the level of adverse or cumulative effects on the following values and characteristics would be avoided as far as practicable:
    a. sites or areas of significance to Māori in Schedule 6
    b. areas identified as outstanding or high natural character in Schedule 4
    c. areas identified as outstanding natural features or outstanding natural landscapes in Schedule 3
    d. areas of significant indigenous biodiversity value in Schedule 7
    e. areas commonly used for recreation activities or public access, including areas used for surfing, or commonly used commercial vessel routes
    f. areas identified as having historic heritage values in Schedule 8.
4. The level of mitigation provided for the loss of public marine or landward access, natural character and biodiversity values
5. The level of adverse effects on coastal processes, including currents and sediment flows and tidal flushing of the marina basin, including any resultant water quality degradation or any off-site erosion.

MAR-P3 Management of a new Marina Area or an extension to an Existing Marina Area

Ensure a new Marina Area or an extension to an existing Marina Area:

1. manages space safely and efficiently
2. provides management services including as a minimum: rubbish disposal facilities, sewage pump out facilities, equipment for managing oil, diesel or refuelling discharges, bunding and procedures to ensure any residues or discharges from vessel maintenance do not enter the coastal marine area
3. designs, maintains and manages all structures to a standard that ensures structural integrity is maintained at all times
4. manages any biosecurity risk to minimise the risk of introduction or spread of harmful aquatic organisms

5. manages any discharges into the coastal marine area from a vessel or landward areas, in a way that meets the water quality standards in Schedule 9 and the Resource Management (Marine Pollution) Regulations 1998
6. uses any dredged material for beach nourishment purposes, unless considered unsuitable for the locality.

Rules

Permitted Activities

MAR-R1 Structures within an Existing Marina Area

	Activity status: PER The erection, placement, maintenance, replacement, removal, and use of and occupation of space by any structure, used solely to facilitate and service the berthing of vessels, within a Marina Area, and including any associated discharge to water or disturbance to or deposit on the seabed. Where: 1. The structure has been authorised by the Marina Area consent holder. 2. The structures must be designed, constructed and maintained to a structurally safe standard at all times. 3. The activity must not result in the water quality standards in Schedule 9 or the Resource Management (Marine Pollution) Regulations 1998 being contravened. 4. Structures must be inspected for construction standards, maintenance and biosecurity purposes at installation, and when any change is made to the structures and at least every three years. 5. All components of the structure must be cleaned of any harmful aquatic organisms or other biofouling at the time of installation and at the triennial maintenance check, or at the time period as specified in the consent. 6. All notifiable harmful aquatic organisms must be removed from the structure, collected and reported to the Harbourmaster within 24 hours of detection.	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **NC**

Controlled Activities

MAR-R2 Discharges within an existing Marina Area

	Activity status: CON Any discharge to water in the Marina Area. **Control is reserved over:** 1. The discharge standards to be met; and 2. The catchment of the discharge; and 3. The design of any discharge structures to avoid any adverse erosion effects; and 4. The method for the management of run-off and residue collection from hard stand/ boat cleaning areas.	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **N/A**

Discretionary Activities

MAR-R3 Dredging and deposition associated with an existing Marina Area

	Activity status: RDA The removal of sand, shingle, shell, mud or other natural marine material from the CMA for the purpose of maintenance dredging within an existing Marina Area and including any associated marina access channel, and the associated deposition of dredged material. <u>Where:</u> 1. Any dredged material is used for beach replenishment purposes. 2. Any sediment containing more than 3% by weight of mud is to be disposed of on land or at a suitable off-shore location. *[In this context mud is defined as having a sediment size less than 63 microns].* **Matters of discretion:** 1. Water quality standards 2. The frequency and timing of the dredging and deposition 3. The method of dredging 4. The volume and area of dredged and deposition material in any one year 5. The location, method and monitoring of the deposition 6. Method of managing any hazardous material.	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **NC**

Non-complying Activities

MAR-R4 New Marina Area or Extension to an Existing Marina Area

	Activity status: NC The development of a new Marina Area or an extension to an existing Marina Area, including any of the following activities: 1. erection, placement, maintenance, replacement of structures 2. use of and occupation of space 3. any disturbance to the seabed associated with the structures, dredging and disposal of dredged material 4. discharge to water associated with the construction and operation stages of the development 5. reclamation of the foreshore or seabed.	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **N/A**

16 MO – Moorings | Ngā pou herenga waka

Overview

In most of the region's harbours there are defined mooring areas, which provide a convenient and efficient way to manage space for moorings along with taking into account other community and natural values.

There is an increasing demand for permanent moorings, and in some of the existing areas, demand exceeds the space available. There has also been incremental sprawl of moorings in various places around the region. These pressures can impact on other public uses and values of the coastal marine area, such as for example, natural character, landscape, biodiversity, public access and amenity values.

At present moorings are either pole moorings (vessels moored in lines attached to poles) or swing moorings (a central anchored point that allows the vessel to swing with the tide). New technologies may also be used in the future to enable efficient use of space and less impacts on the benthos.

In the future, moorings within Mooring Areas will be managed by a mooring licence system under the Waikato Regional Council 2013 Navigation Safety Bylaw (revised edition 2020) (NS Bylaw). All other moorings will require a resource consent.

Note: This chapter applies only to vessel moorings and does not apply to other moorings, such as those required for navigation safety buoys, or research and monitoring gauges. These are covered in the Structures chapter.

Cross references to other relevant plan provisions

Other chapters contain provisions that may also be relevant to moorings, these include:

- **Discharges DIS** – in relation to discharges from vessels
- **Disturbances and Deposition DD** – in relation to disturbing the foreshore and seabed
- **Ecosystems and Indigenous Biodiversity ECO** – in relation to protecting biodiversity, including seagrass, seabirds and marine mammals from mooring effects
- **Public access and recreation PA** – in relation to enabling or restricting public access
- **Structures STR** - in relation to establishing, using, and maintaining structures.

Objectives

MO-01 Establish mooring areas

Establish Mooring Areas to ensure safe and efficient use of public space, and to protect public and natural values.

MO-02 Restrict moorings outside mooring areas

The spread of moorings located outside Mooring Areas is restricted to appropriate locations, taking into account public and natural values.

Policies

MO-P1 Enabling moorings in mooring areas

Enable moorings within the Mooring Areas, as defined in Schedule 2, to ensure that:

1. The space available within the Mooring Area is used efficiently and safely;
2. Activities that are not directly related to mooring activities are discouraged; and
3. The maximum number of moorings within each Mooring Area will be based on the suitability of the space to accommodate moorings, the size of vessels, the most efficient mooring layout, and the type of mooring system or new mooring technology.

MO-P2 Management of Moorings within a Mooring Area

Manage moorings within the Mooring Areas, as defined in Schedule 2, by ensuring that:

1. The mooring structure and any associated occupation of space of the vessel when tied to the mooring, is located within the boundaries of the Mooring Area at all times;
2. The mooring structure is designed, maintained and managed to a standard that: ensures navigational safety, manages biosecurity risk to minimise the introduction or spread of harmful aquatic organisms, maintains structural integrity at all times, and is suitably designed for the size of the vessel; and
3. The owner of the mooring holds a current mooring license or a current resource consent.

MO-P3 Prohibited Mooring Areas

Avoid moorings in inappropriate areas which are identified as Prohibited Moorings Areas.

MO-P4 Location of Moorings outside the Mooring Areas and outside the Prohibited Mooring Areas.

Locating a mooring outside the Mooring Areas, and outside the Prohibited Mooring Areas, as as defined in Schedule 2, must demonstrate:

1. The necessity for the mooring to be in that location, and the alternatives considered including the reason why land-based vessel storage is not practicable, feasible or otherwise available;
2. That the proposed location will:
    a. avoid any navigation or safety hazard to other vessels; and
    b. avoid adverse effects on other existing lawfully established activities in the area, including but not limited to other moorings, marinas, submarine cables, overhead power lines, aquaculture farms, access to wharves, jetties, boat ramps or navigation channels, ferry access routes, and any specified activity zones identified in the operative NS Bylaw; and
    c. avoid locating in or near locally known and used anchorage areas; and
3. That the following effects have been addressed:
    a. the proximity to shore, and the potential impact on public use and access to beaches; and
    b. the exposure of the area and the potential risk to the mooring and vessel from rough weather and sea conditions; and
4. That a cumulative effects assessment has addressed, the number of existing moorings, the geographical setting and proportion of the area already used for moorings, other activities and uses in the area, and ad hoc sprawl; and
5. That the proposed location and type of mooring will avoid adverse effects on the:
    a. values of significance to tangata whenua
    b. areas identified as outstanding natural character in Schedule 4;

c. areas identified as outstanding natural features or outstanding natural landscapes in Schedule 3;
d. areas identified as being significant natural areas, including in particular seagrass areas;
e. areas identified as regionally significant surf breaks in Schedule 8
f. areas commonly used for recreation activities or public access, or commonly used commercial vessel routes;
g. areas identified as having historic heritage values.

MO-P5 Management of Moorings outside Mooring Areas and outside the Prohibited Mooring Areas

Manage moorings outside the Mooring Areas, and outside the Prohibited Mooring Areas, as defined in Schedule 2 by ensuring that:

1. The design of the mooring structure is appropriate for the marine conditions and the size of vessel to be moored; and
2. The proposed type of mooring system is appropriate for the location, including avoiding adverse effects on seagrass areas identified in Schedule 2; and
3. The biosecurity risk to minimise the introduction or spread of harmful aquatic organisms is managed; and
4. Appropriate methods and timeframes for maintaining the mooring structure are specified.

MO-P6 Anchoring of Vessels

Enable the anchoring of a vessel as a temporary structure provided:

1. The location is not identified in the WRC operative NS Bylaw as being a restricted or prohibited anchorage area;
2. The location does not obstruct or cause any obstruction or safety risk to other activities;
3. The location is not within a Significant Natural Area where seagrass is identified in Schedule 2; and
4. The vessel and anchor are removed after seven days, and does not occur in the general vicinity for another month.

MO-P7 Unauthorised Moorings

Any mooring that does not hold a current resource consent, or a mooring licence in accordance with the operative NS Bylaw, is an unauthorised mooring, and must be removed from the coastal marine area.

Advisory notes:

1. *A mooring will be deemed to be unauthorised and shall be removed from the coastal marine area unless the mooring owner holds a current resource consent, or a mooring licence in accordance with the operative NS Bylaw.*
2. *Any abandoned structure will be managed in accordance with s19 Marine and Coastal Area (Takutai Moana) Act 2011 and/or the operative NS Bylaw.*

Rules

Permitted Activities

MO-R1 Moorings within Mooring Areas

	Activity status: PER The erection, placement, maintenance, replacement, removal, and use of, or occupation of space by a mooring (and including the vessel when tied to the mooring), which is used for the purpose of mooring a vessel within a Mooring Area, and any associated disturbance to the seabed. <u>Where:</u> 1. The mooring holder must hold either: a. a current mooring licence; or b. a current resource consent, issued prior to 1 October 2022; and 2. The mooring structure must: a. be designed, constructed and maintained to a standard suitable to the depth, salinity and current conditions of the Mooring Area, and to be able to withstand storm events, and b. be of adequate specifications to safely moor the size of the associated vessel; and c. be inspected for construction standards, maintenance and biosecurity purposes at installation, and when any change is made to the moorings structure and at least every three years, by a Council approved mooring contractor; and 3. There must be adequate space provided between neighbouring vessels during all weather and tidal conditions, to ensure no collisions occur; and 4. Any mooring buoy, and any pole authorised to a mooring holder, must be marked with the mooring number, and be visible at all times; and 5. Any mooring buoy must remain buoyant and visible at all times; and 6. All components of the mooring structure must be cleaned of any harmful aquatic organisms or other biofouling at the time of installation and at the triennial maintenance check, or at a shorter time period as specified in the consent or a mooring licence; and 7. All notifiable harmful aquatic organisms removed from the mooring structure must be: a. collected and contained on board the maintenance vessel, and must be disposed of on land; and b. notifiable harmful aquatic organisms must be reported to the Harbourmaster within 24 hours of detection.

MO-R2 Relocation of a mooring within a Mooring Area

	Activity status: PER The relocation of an authorised mooring within a Mooring Area and any associated disturbance to the seabed. Where: 1. The relocation is undertaken by the authorised mooring holder, the Harbourmaster or their respective agents; and 2. The mooring holder has written approval from the Regional Council's Harbourmaster, prior to the relocation taking place; and 3. Adequate space is provided between vessels during all weather and tidal conditions, to ensure no collisions can potentially occur.

MO-R3 Removal of a mooring

	Activity status: PER The removal of a mooring, and any associated disturbance to the seabed. Where: 1. The removal is undertaken by the authorised mooring holder or their agent and the mooring holder has provided written notice to the Harbourmaster within 1 week of the removal; or 2. The removal is undertaken by the Harbourmaster for an unauthorised mooring or for the purpose of relocation of an existing mooring and as authorised by the mooring owner; and 3. All components of the mooring structure are removed from the coastal marine area excluding any screw anchor, or any mooring structure weight that is buried or partially buried in the seafloor.

MO-R4 Anchoring

	Activity status: PER The erection, placement, use of and occupation of space by any structure for the purpose of temporarily anchoring a vessel, and any associated disturbance to the foreshore or seabed. Where: 1. the vessel is not anchored in an area identified in the WRC operative NS Bylaw as being a restricted or prohibited anchorage area; 2. the vessel is not anchored in a Significant Natural Area where seagrass is identified in Schedule 7; and 3. the vessel is not anchored in a Mooring Area, as defined in Schedule 2.

Controlled Activities

MO-R5 **Moorings in the Taharoa Harbour Mooring Area**

	Activity status: CON The erection, placement, maintenance, replacement, use of and occupation of space by a mooring (and including the vessel when tied to the mooring), within the Taharoa Harbour Mooring Area, as defined in Schedule 2, and any associated disturbance to the seabed. Where: 1. No more than one permanent mooring is located within the Taharoa Harbour Mooring Area; and 2. The mooring structure must: a. be designed, constructed and maintained to a standard suitable to the depth, salinity and current conditions of the Mooring Area, and to be able to withstand storm events; and b. be of adequate specifications to safely moor the size of vessel to be moored; and 3. An inspection and maintenance plan demonstrates how the mooring will be maintained in a safe manner at all times; and 4. A biosecurity management plan demonstrates how the biosecurity risk will be managed.

Discretionary Activities

MO-R6 **Moorings outside any overlay area and outside a Mooring Area and outside the Prohibited Mooring Area**

	Activity status: DIS The erection, placement, maintenance, replacement, use of and occupation of space by a mooring (and including the vessel when tied to the mooring), located 1. Outside a Mooring Area; and 2. Outside the Prohibited Mooring Area (as defined in Schedule 2); and 3. Outside any Outstanding Natural Character Area, Outstanding Natural Features and Landscapes Area (Seascapes), Significant Indigenous Biodiversity Area, or any Site or Area of Significance to Māori, (identified in Schedules 3, 4, 7 and 8 to this Plan) and any associated disturbance to the seabed.

Non-complying Activities

MO-R7 **Moorings inside an overlay area and outside a Mooring Area and outside the Prohibited Mooring Area**

	Activity status: NC The erection, placement, maintenance, replacement, use of and occupation of space and any associated disturbance to the seabed, by a mooring (and including the vessel when tied to the mooring), located 1. Inside an Outstanding Natural Character Area, Outstanding Natural Features and Landscapes Area (Seascapes), Significant Indigenous Biodiversity Area, or any Site or Area of Significance to Māori, (identified in Schedules 3, 4, 7 and 8 to this Plan); and

	2. Outside a Mooring Area; and 3. Outside a Prohibited Mooring Area (as defined in Schedule 2).

Prohibited Activities

MO-R8 Prohibited Mooring Area

	Activity status: PR The erection, placement, use of and occupation of space by any mooring within a Prohibited Mooring Area, as defined in Schedule 2.

MO-R9 Renewal of Mooring Consent inside a Mooring Area

	Activity status: PR The renewal of an existing mooring resource consent within a Mooring Area.

Reference documents to add

- Waikato Regional Council 2013 Navigation Safety Bylaw (revised edition 2020)

17 NOISE – Noise and Vibration | Harurutanga

Overview

Activities that cause noise and vibration in the CMA or on adjoining land can affect the health of people, amenity values and wildlife, including marine mammals. This chapter contains objectives, policies and rules to manage the effects of noise for different receiving environments and activities within the CMA.

Waikato Regional Council is responsible for controlling noise emissions and for mitigating the effects of noise in the CMA. The control of noise generated from land above Mean High Water Springs is the responsibility of territorial authorities and cannot be controlled by this plan.

Noise generated in the coastal marine area can come from the operation of vessels, both commercial and recreational, marinas, temporary military training, aquaculture, and recreational activities, including vehicles on the foreshore. The threshold of reasonable noise levels in different areas of the coast will depend on the sensitivity of those areas. In addition to the noise controls in this chapter, section 16 of the RMA requires every person carrying out an activity in, on, or under the CMA to adopt the best practicable option to ensure noise emissions are reasonable.

Underwater noise can have an adverse effect on a range of marine animals that rely on sound to communicate, navigate, hunt and mate. Noise generated by certain underwater activities, such as blasting, marine seismic surveys, impact and vibratory piling, are required to be managed to minimise effects on wildlife, amenity values and people's health.

There are a number of New Zealand standards that apply to the measurement of noise and vibration, with the Department of Conservation Code of Conduct for minimising acoustic disturbance to marine mammals from seismic survey operations.

Cross references to other relevant plan provisions

Other chapters contain provisions for activities that may generate noise and vibration, these include:

- **Disturbance and Deposition DD** – in relation to vehicles on beaches and any temporary or ongoing activity which may create underwater or surface noise.
- **Ecosystems and Indigenous Biodiversity ECO** – in relation to protecting wildlife, including seabirds and marine mammals
- **Public access and recreation PA** – in relation to noise generating activities.

Objectives

NOISE-O1 Manage noise and vibration

Noise and vibration from activities undertaken in the coastal marine area does not adversely affect natural character, amenity values or wildlife, or compromise the health and well-being of marine fauna and people

Policies

NOISE-P1 Apply best management practice

Apply best management practice to minimise the adverse effects from noise and vibration on human health, amenity values and wildlife.

Advisory note:

1. *The 2013 Code of Conduct for Minimising Acoustic Disturbance to Marine Mammals from Seismic Survey Operations is an example of best management practice.*

NOISE-P2 Recreational vessel noise

Recreational vessels such as personal watercraft, water ski boats and hovercraft, which exceed the noise standards in this plan, shall only operate within the personal watercraft and towing zones identified in the Waikato Navigation Safety Bylaws (NS Bylaws), or beyond 200 metres off the coast.

NOISE-P3 Adverse effects of noise on wildlife

Avoid, remedy or mitigate adverse effects of noise from activities in the coastal marine area on wildlife, including seabirds and marine mammals, and especially effects on their continued occupation of their habitat, including feeding and roosting areas and their ability to breed successfully.

NOISE-P4 Mitigate underwater noise

Require underwater blasting, impact and vibratory piling, and marine seismic surveys in the coastal marine area to mitigate noise so that it does not exceed a reasonable level, and ensure that the health and well-being of wildlife (including threatened and at-risk species) and people from the noise associated with the activity is maintained.

Rules

Permitted Activities

NOISE-R1 Permitted noise from specified activities in the Coastal Marine Area

	Activity status: PER Noise generated from the following activities in the coastal marine area: 1. navigational aids, safety signals, warning devices, or emergency pressure relief valves 2. emergency work undertaken to protect human life, or to prevent loss or serious damage to property, or minimise or prevent environmental damage 3. the deployment and operation of temporary scientific instruments or apparatus 4. discharge of firearms by licensed hunters 5. use of vessels within the water ski access lanes and areas or personal watercraft areas identified in the Waikato Regional Council Navigation Safety Bylaws 6. temporary events.	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **DIS**

	Where: 1. The person(s) carrying out the activity uses best management practices to ensure the emission of noise does not exceed a reasonable level; and 2. the activity complies with the noise provisions of the adjoining local authority when measured at the notional CMA boundary.	

NOISE-R2 Recreational vessel noise

	Activity status: PER Noise generated from recreational vessels, including personal water craft, hovercraft and jet boats, outside of designated areas for such use in the NS Bylaws in the coastal marine area. Where: 1. The noise level from a pass-by measured at 25m from the craft in accordance with ISO 2922:2000 not exceeding: 0800 to 2000 hours: 85 dB SEL 2000 to 0800 hours: 75 dB SEL	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **DIS**

NOISE-R3 Noise from temporary military training activities

	Activity status: PER Noise generated from temporary military training activities for defence purposes, undertaken in accordance with the Defence Act 1990. Where: 1. For weapons firing (excluding blasting): a. There is a minimum separation distance when measured from the activity of: 0700 to 1900 hours: 500m 1900 to 0700 hours: 1,250m b. Where minimum separation distances cannot be met, peak sound when measured at the notional boundary, does not exceed: 0700 to 1900 hours: 95 dB L_{Cpeak} 1900 to 0700 hours: 85 dB L_{Cpeak} 2. Temporary mobile sources of noise comply with the noise limits set out in Table 2 and 3 of the 6803:1999 Acoustics – Construction noise where reference to 'construction noise' is a reference to mobile noise sources. 3. Fixed stationary noise when measured at the notional boundary, on any day, does not exceed the following limits: 0700 to 1900 hours: 55 dB L_{Aeq}, - dB L_{Afmax} 1900 to 2200 hours: 50 dB L_{Aeq} 2200 to 0700 hours: 45 dB L_{Aeq}, 75 dB L_{Afmax}	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **DIS**

Restricted Discretionary Activities

NOISE-R4 Underwater noise generation

	Activity status: RD Noise from underwater blasting, impact and vibratory pile driving (excluding timber piles), and marine seismic survey. Where: 1. The activity is not located within: a. any habitat identified as a significant value, listed in Schedule 7 to this Plan, or listed as a threatened or at risk species as assessed under Table 11A of the RPS b. an historic heritage site, listed in Schedule 5 c. a marine reserve, taiapure or mataitai reserve, or a marine mammal protected area under the Marine Mammals Protection Act 1978. 2. The activity is undertaken in accordance with the Department of Conservation Code of Conduct for minimising acoustic disturbance to marine mammals from seismic survey operations 2013. **Matters of discretion:** 1. The health and wellbeing of wildlife (including threatened and at-risk species) and people from noise generated from the proposal. 2. The practicability of controlling the underwater noise effects. 3. Location, extent, timing, duration and construction methods. 4. The extent to which non-transitory or more than minor adverse effects on threatened or at risk species (including Maui's Dolphin and Bryde's Whale) are avoided. 5. Consent duration and monitoring.	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **DIS**

Discretionary Activities

NOISE-R5 Noise generated from blasting and detonation of munitions

	Activity status: DIS Noise generated from blasting and detonation of munitions within the coastal marine area. Where: 1. The activity is not located within: a. any habitat identified as a significant value, listed in Schedule 7 to this Plan, or listed as a threatened or at risk species as assessed under Table 11A of the RPS b. an historic heritage site, listed in Schedule 5 c. a marine reserve, taiapure or mataitai reserve, or a marine mammal protected area under the Marine Mammals Protection Act 1978.	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **NC**

	2. The activity is undertaken during daylight hours and the peak sound pressure when measured 1 metre from the façade of any occupied building does not exceed 120 dB $L_{Zpeak.}$	

NOISE-R6 Emission of noise from other activities in the Coastal Marine Area

	Activity status: DIS Noise generated from activities in the coastal marine area not otherwise managed by a rule in this plan.	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **N/A**

Standards and Terms for all rules:

Noise and vibration from activities in the coastal marine area is to be measured, assessed and managed using the relevant standards listed below:

- New Zealand Standard 6801:2008 Acoustics – Measurement of environmental sound
- New Zealand Standard 6802:2008 Acoustics – Environmental noise
- New Zealand Standard 6803:1999 Acoustics – Construction noise
- New Zealand Standard 6805:1992 Airport noise management and land use planning – measurement only
- New Zealand Standard 6806:2010 Acoustics – Road-traffic noise – New and altered roads
- New Zealand Standard 6807:1994 – Noise Management and Land Use Planning for Helicopter Landing Areas- excluding 4.3 Averaging
- New Zealand Standard 6808:2010 Acoustics – Wind farm noise
- New Zealand Standard 6809:1999 Acoustics – Port noise management and land use planning
- DIN 4150-3:2016 – Vibrations in buildings – Part 3: Effects on structures
- ISO-4866:2010 – Mechanical vibration and shock
- ISO 2922:2020 – Measurement of airborne sound emitted by vessels on inland waterways and harbours.

New Zealand Standards that are to be material to be incorporated by reference to be consulted on

Any plan rule to manage noise emissions must be in accordance with the mandatory noise measurement methods and symbols in the applicable New Zealand Standards incorporated by reference into the planning standards and listed below:

- New Zealand Standard 6801:2008 Acoustics – Measurement of environmental sound
- New Zealand Standard 6802:2008 Acoustics – Environmental noise
- New Zealand Standard 6803:1999 Acoustics – Construction noise

- DIN 4150-3:2016 – Vibrations in buildings – Part 3: Effects on structures

- ISO-4866:2010 – Mechanical vibration and shock
- ISO 2922:2020 – Measurement of airborne sound emitted by vessels on inland waterways and harbours.

- 2013 Code of conduct for minimising acoustic disturbance to marine mammals from seismic survey operations.

18 PA – Public access and recreation | Ara tumatanui me ngā mahi a rēhia

Overview

Public access to and along the CMA is a matter of national importance under the RMA and a key requirement of the NZCPS. There is a public expectation of having free, safe walking access to and along the coast and the ability to undertake recreational activities in the coastal marine area.

Access within the CMA relies on access to the coast. The provision of access to the coast, and on the landward side of the coastline and on some foreshore areas is primarily the responsibility of territorial authorities. There is a need for integrated management between these agencies and communities when determining appropriate routes or levels of public access.

Waikato Regional Council is responsible for managing public access on some foreshore areas and in the coastal marine area. Any use and development must consider the importance of free, safe and practical public access and the ability to use and appreciate areas of public open space.

Subdivision, use and development of land in the coastal environment can result in the reduction or loss of opportunities for public walking access to, along and through the CMA. Public access can also be threatened by coastal erosion and sea level rise, creating 'coastal squeeze'.

A restriction on public walking access should only be considered in exceptional circumstances when it is necessary to protect specific values or address conflicts, but alternative linking access should be provided in these situations.

Cross references to other relevant plan provisions

Other chapters contain provisions that address public access and recreation, these include:

- **Aquaculture AQA** – in relation to both enabling public access and restricting public access
- **Disturbance and Deposition DD** – in relation to vehicles on beaches and any temporary or ongoing restrictions of public access.
- **Structures STR** – in relation to any occupation of space and restriction on access.

Objectives

PA-O1 Maintain and enhance public access

Public access to, along and through the coastal marine area is maintained and enhanced, except where a restriction on public access is considered necessary.

PA-O2 Provide for public use and cultural practices

Recognise the need for public open space in the coastal marine area to provide for and support public use, recreation and enjoyment, and traditional cultural practices.

Policies

PA-P1 Protecting public access

Retain public access by avoiding, remedying or mitigating any adverse effects of activities on public access.

PA-P2 Maintaining and Enhancing Public Use and Recreation

Maintain and enhance opportunities for public use and recreation of public open space in the coastal marine area, and cultural purposes, including by:

1. Retaining and enhancing the connection of areas of public open space
2. Providing access to kai moana and mahinga kai
3. Providing access to sites of historical and/or cultural importance
4. Improving outdoor recreation opportunities
5. Improving access to surf breaks
6. Providing access for people with disabilities.

While taking account of future needs for public space and the likely impacts of climate change and coastal processes.

PA-P3 Restriction of walking access

Only allow restriction of public walking access to, along and adjacent to the coastal marine area where the restriction is necessary for:

1. The protection of areas of significant indigenous vegetation and significant habitats of indigenous fauna
2. The protection of sites and activities of cultural value to Māori
3. The protection of historic heritage values
4. The protection of public health or safety
5. The avoidance or reduction of conflicts between public uses
6. Defence purposes in accordance with the Defence Act 1990

7. Temporary activities or special events
8. Ensuring a level of security consistent with the purpose of a resource consent; or
9. In other exceptional circumstances sufficient to justify the restriction.

And where practicable, provide alternative routes or methods of public access at all times, prior to the imposition of restrictions.

Rules

Advisory note:

1. *This chapter contains no rules. The objective and policies for Public Access and Recreation are to be given effect to through the relevant activity rules of the plan. See in particular Structures (STR) and Disturbances (DD).*

19 STR – Structures and occupation of space | Ngā hanganga i te takutai

Overview

Structures in the coastal marine area can be important in enabling people and communities to provide for their social, economic and cultural wellbeing, and some may have historical significance.

The growth of the Waikato region and people living next to the coast means there is an ongoing demand for new structures in the coastal marine area. Structures need to have a functional need to be located in the coastal marine area and should provide for multiple uses where possible, taking into account the purpose and use of the structure.

The most common structures in the Waikato coastal marine area include infrastructure (public and private), pipes, navigation aids, bridges, culverts, seawalls, maimai, whitebait stands, wharves, jetties, boat ramps and research and monitoring equipment.

The effects of establishing, using and maintaining structures in the coastal marine area vary from siting temporary structures with minor effects through to significant infrastructure that requires a coastal location. Structures must be designed to take into account coastal processes and natural hazards, including the expected effects from climate change and sea level rise.

Waikato Regional Council can impose charges for occupation of the coastal marine area, provided the charging regime is included in the regional coastal plan. Council has decided not to include a charging regime in the regional coastal plan at this time.

Cross references to other relevant plan provisions

Other chapters contain provisions relevant to structures and associated activities, these include:

- **Disturbance and deposition DD** – in relation to establishing, using, and maintaining structures which often involves disturbing the foreshore and seabed and can interrupt coastal processes.
- **Ecosystems and indigenous biodiversity ECO** – in relation to protecting wildlife, including seabirds and marine mammals
- **Historic heritage HH** – some structures may have heritage value and associated disturbance and deposition to erect or remove a structure may affect identified heritage values
- **Natural hazards NH** – all structures need to adapt and respond to rising see levels in managing associated natural hazard risks
- **Public access and recreation PA** – in relation to enabling or restricting public access associated with any new or existing structure.

Objectives

STR-O1 Recognise and provide for structures in appropriate locations

Structures and occupation that depend upon the use of natural and physical resources in the coastal marine area, or have a functional need to be located in the coastal marine area, are recognised and provided for in appropriate locations.

STR-O2 Location and design of structures

Structures are appropriately located and designed to minimise adverse effects on indigenous biodiversity, natural character, seascape, historic heritage and tangata whenua values, and avoid any significant existing or future coastal hazard risk.

STR-O3 Construction, maintenance and removal of structures

Construction, maintenance and removal of structures are carried out in a manner which protects coastal processes, natural character and amenity values, does not constitute a hazard to navigation and is compatible with other uses of the coastal marine area and adjacent land.

STR-O4 Exclusive occupation of the coastal marine area

Exclusive occupation is only provided for where activities have a functional need to be in the coastal marine area and their occupation is incompatible with other activities.

STR-O5 Beneficial structures

Structures are provided for in appropriate locations to enable public access, Māori cultural activities and customary use in accordance with tikanga Māori, public health and safety and scientific research and monitoring.

Policies

STR-P1 Structures associated with activities that are generally appropriate

Recognise that structures that have a functional need to locate in the coastal marine area and are associated with the following activities are generally appropriate, provided they are outside of *high value areas* and avoid, remedy or mitigate adverse effects:

1. New and existing regionally significant infrastructure
2. Sugar Loaf Wharf (Te Ariki) and Kōpū Marine Precinct development areas
3. Facilities that provide public recreational use and access that is dependent on a coastal location
4. Existing River and Flood Protection Schemes
5. Customary activities in the coastal marine are such as whare waka, tauranga waka or whare wānanga.

STR-P2 Location of structures to avoid adverse effects

Require structures to be located to avoid significant adverse effects and avoid, remedy or mitigate other adverse effects on the values of areas identified as:

1. Sites and areas of significance to Māori (as identified in Schedule 6)
2. Significant Indigenous Biological Diversity Area A sites which meet the criteria in Policy 11(a) of the NZCPS 2010 (as identified in Schedule 7)

3. Areas of Outstanding Natural Character which meet the criteria in Policy 13 of the NZCPS 2010 (as identified in Schedule 3)
4. Significant Seascapes, being areas of Outstanding Natural Features and Natural Landscapes, which meet the criteria in Policy 15 of the NZCPS 2010 (as identified in Schedule 4)
5. Any gazetted marine mammal sanctuary or marine reserve
6. Nationally or regionally significant surf breaks (as identified in Schedule 8)
7. Significant historic heritage sites (as identified in Schedule 5)
8. Navigable river mouths
9. In any mooring area shown in the maps to this Plan.

STR-P3 Location of structures in the coastal marine area (alternative to STR-P1 and STR-P2)

Enable the location of structures in the coastal marine area provided:

1. Any structure has a functional or operational need to locate in the coastal marine area
2. Is not located in the Whanganui A Hei (Haihei) Marine Reserve or any other marine reserves established under the Marine Reserves Act 1971 except for navigational or boundary buoys or structures associated with scientific or educational research
3. The structure is designed, located and managed so as to avoid significant adverse effects and avoid, remedy or mitigate other adverse effects
4. Provides for the co-location of structures where appropriate
5. Is available for public or multiple use, unless limitations on public access under PAR-P3 apply.
6. Provides for the efficient use of space and co-location of structures, and use without undue delay.

STR-P4 Structures for public benefit

Enable structures in appropriate locations, subject to the appropriate management of adverse effects, where the structure is to provide for:

1. Public access and use of the coastal marine area, including for Māori cultural use or recreational activities (excluding whitebait stands)
2. Public health and safety, including navigational aids
3. Scientific or educational study or research
4. The efficient operation of regionally significant infrastructure
5. Restoration of natural character, biodiversity and ecosystem processes.

STR-P5 Development and operation of significant infrastructure

Development, operation, maintenance and upgrade of nationally or regionally significant infrastructure, is recognised and enabled in appropriate circumstances to meet current and future needs.

STR-P6 Removal of abandoned or derelict structures

Provide for the removal of abandoned, unused or derelict structures (including removal of consented structures) from the coastal marine area, including where such structures are:

1. Having an adverse effect on cultural or natural heritage values
2. Causing a navigation safety risk
3. Endangering public health and safety, or
4. Restricting public access to and along the coastal marine area.

Provided the effects of removal and associated disturbance to the foreshore and seabed are no more than minor.

STR-P7 Maintenance and repair of existing structures

Enable existing lawful structures to be maintained and repaired to ensure structural integrity, improve efficiency, and address health and safety and navigational safety issues provided the intensity and scale of the adverse effects of the structure or activity are not increased

STR-P8 Extension and alteration of existing structures

Provide for extension or alteration of existing lawful structures where it will result in more efficient use of the structure, or reduce the need for a new structure and any adverse effects are appropriately mitigated.

STR-P9 Alternatives to hard protection structures favoured

Nature-based solutions or soft protection structures are favoured and hard protection structures are discouraged. Recognising that hard protection structures may be the only practical means to protect regionally significant infrastructure, marae, significant cultural areas, or important public spaces and assets from coastal hazard risk during the lifetime of this plan.

STR-P10 Structures to protect private property generally not allowed

Structures whose sole purpose is to protect private property from natural hazard risk will not generally be allowed.

STR-P11 Occupation of space in the coastal marine area

Structures and related activities occupying space within the common marine and coastal area should be established and operated in a manner that does not unreasonably restrict or prevent other users of the coastal marine area.

STR-P12 Public access associated with erosion protection structures

Ensure the provision of public access to, along and over existing and new erosion protection structures in the coastal marine area, unless a restriction on public access is necessary due to location and public safety.

Rules

Advisory notes:

1. *The rules in this chapter do not apply to Aquaculture (AQA) and Moorings (MOR), which are addressed in those separate chapter of the plan.*
2. *In accordance with s30(1)(d)(ii) of the RMA, coastal permits relating to the occupation of space apply only to land that is common marine and coastal area foreshore or seabed that is vested in the Crown or regional council.*
3. *Structures in the CMA may be "buildings" for the purposes of the Building Act 1991. As such they may require building consent (regardless of their status under the RMA, including any rules in this Plan); and must comply with the Building Code (regardless of the need or not for a building consent).*
4. *Any discharge to the CMA associated with a structure may also require resource consent - refer to the Discharges (DIS) rules of this Plan.*

Permitted Activities

STR-R1 Existing structures

	Activity status: PER The occupation of the common marine and coastal area by the following structures that existed as at 1 October 2022, or were previously authorised. Where: 1. The structure complies with all relevant structure rules in this plan 2. The structure owner can provide, if requested by the Regional Council: a. clear written or photographic evidence the structure existed at 1 October 2022, or b. a copy of the necessary authorisation(s) for the structure. *Advisory note:* *1. For the avoidance of doubt this rule covers the occupation of the common marine and coastal area with a structure under section s12(2) RMA.*	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **N/A**

STR-R2 Temporary structures

	Activity status: PER Erect, place, use, or occupy space by any temporary structure (excluding structures for the purpose of aquaculture or mooring). Where: 1. The structure is not placed on: a. any SIB-A areas identified in Schedule 7 b. existing shellfish beds c. significant historic heritage site listed in Schedule 5 d. site or area of significance to Māori listed in Schedule 6, or wāhi tapu site. 2. Is free of harmful aquatic organisms at all times 3. Located at least twenty metres from any flood gate, culvert, bridge or sand or gravel mining operation (unless the activity is associated with those structures) 4. Public access to and along the coastal marine area is not restricted, other than temporary restrictions for reasons of public health and safety.	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **CON**

STR-R3 Maimai structures

	Activity status: PER Erect, reconstruct, use, place, alter, extend, remove or demolish a maimai structure in the coastal marine area, including the occupation of space. Where: 1. No indigenous vegetation is used in the construction of the maimai	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **NC**

	2. No clearance of indigenous vegetation is undertaken, other than immediately underneath the maimai, and the minimum clearance necessary to maintain single file foot access to the maimai 3. The footprint of the maimai is no more than 10 square metres 4. The structure is maintained in a structurally safe condition at all times 5. The height of the structure does not exceed 3 metres 6. The structure is not located in any: a. SIB-A or SIB-B areas identified in Schedule 7; or b. existing shellfish beds; or c. historic heritage site listed in Schedule 6; or d. site of significance to tangata whenua, archaeological or wāhi tapu site. 7. The maimai does not impede the use of navigable harbour or estuary channels.	

STR-R3b Whitebait stands

	Activity status: PER Erect, reconstruct, use, place, alter, extend, remove or demolish a whitebait stand structure in the coastal marine area, including the occupation of space. <u>Where:</u> 1. Is open piled, does not obstruct coastal processes, restrict public access or impede the flow of water or use of navigation channels and kept free of debris 2. Does not extend out into the river from the river bank for more than 10 percent of the river width, or five metres, whichever is the lesser 3. The deck does not exceed four square metres 4. Is maintained in a structurally sound condition at all times 5. Public access to the coastal marine area is maintained 6. Does not damage any river protection works or any existing structure 7. Is not used for living accommodation 8. The owner of the structure notifies Waikato Regional Council in writing, of the location of the structure at least 20 working days prior to commencing construction 9. The structure must be located: a. at least 30 metres from the nearest whitebait stand on the same side of the river; and b. at least 20 metres from any flood gate, confluence, culvert, bridge or commercial operation; and 10. The structure must not be located: a. within any wāhi tapu or significant indigenous biodiversity habitat identified in Schedule 7; or b. where the river width is less than 10 metres. 11. Any erosion as a result of the structure is remedied as soon as practicable	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **NC**

	12. Construction works comply with the discharge rules in the relevant chapter 13. There is no disturbance of any Historic Heritage site listed in Schedule 5, except where Heritage New Zealand Pouhere Taonga approval has been obtained 14. The noise standards in the Noise chapter of this Plan are complied with.	

STR-R4 Monitoring or sampling structures

	Activity status: PER Erect, place, alter, use or occupy the coastal marine area by any equipment, measuring apparatus or similar device for the purpose of carrying out scientific monitoring or research - including, inspections, surveys, investigations, tests, measurements or taking samples. <u>Where:</u> 1. There is a functional need for location of a structure in a coastal marine area location 2. It is free of harmful aquatic organisms at all times 3. It does not modify coastal processes 4. It does not restrict public access to the coastal marine area, beyond that necessary for Health and Safety reasons under Policy PAR-P3 5. Is in place for no longer than three months per deployment (excludes equipment used for civil defence or emergency that is inspected annually or post storm events) and removed after use 6. Does not occupy an area greater than three square metres in any location 7. The structure is clear of debris and maintained in a structurally sound condition, restrained and secure at all times 8. Does not cause a hazard to navigation safety and not located in any marked channel 9. Is not used for commercial aquaculture activities or erosion control 10. Is not located in or accessed through any area of significant indigenous biodiversity SIB-A area identified in Schedule 7 11. Is not placed on any historic heritage site listed in Schedule 5 or site of significance to tangata whenua identified in Schedule 6, or is known wāhi tapu area.	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **CON**

STR-R5 Navigational aids

	Activity status: PER Erect, construct, occupy, alter, extend, remove or use navigational aids in the coastal marine area. <u>Where:</u> 1. it is installed by Waikato Regional Council, Maritime New Zealand or their agents	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **DIS**

	2. placement does not have an adverse effect on any site of significant Historic Heritage listed in Schedule 5 or on any seabed species or habitat identified in Schedule 7 3. the structure is clear of debris and maintained in a safe condition at all times 4. is free of harmful aquatic organisms at all times. *Advisory note:* *1. Navigational aids require approval from the Maritime Safety Authority, in accordance with the Maritime Transport Act, 1994.*	

STR-R6 Waikato Regional Council structures for erosion control

	Activity status: PER Erect, construct, occupy, alter, use, or extend a structure by Waikato Regional Council and associated disturbance, for the purpose of erosion control to stabilise the bank of a river or stream provided: 1. Placement does not have an adverse effect on any Significant Historic Heritage site (identified in Schedule 8), or on any Significant Indigenous Biodiversity Area (identified in Schedule 7), existing shellfish beds, or identified Site or Area of Significance to Māori (identified in Schedule 6) 2. The structure is clear of debris and maintained in a safe condition at all times 3. Safe fish passage is provided both upstream and downstream 4. The design, construction and maintenance will withstand coastal processes, is sufficient to keep the structure in place; and takes into account sea level rise projected over no less than 100 years 5. Placement is against the eroding river or stream bank and be physically attached and not exceed 50 meters in length 6. The structure does not decrease the cross-sectional area of the river or stream 7. Is free of harmful aquatic organisms at all times 8. Does not extend seaward past the river or stream mouth 9. No contaminants are discharged to land or water from vehicle use 10. Equipment used in construction are removed on completion.	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **DIS**

STR-R7 Maintenance and repair of any existing lawful structure

	Activity status: PER Maintenance and repair of any existing lawful structure in the coastal marine area (excluding seawalls). Where: 1. It is not within any significant historic heritage site or item listed in Schedule 5, or any rare or threatened species habitat identified in Schedule 7 2. Any visible disturbance of the foreshore or seabed is remedied within 48 hours	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **CON**

	3. After reasonable mixing any disturbance does not give rise to any: a. conspicuous oil or grease films, scums or foams, or floatable or suspended materials b. conspicuous change of colour or visual clarity c. emission of objectionable odour. 4. There is no increase in the area occupied by the structure 5. There is no substantial change in appearance of the structure (for the avoidance of doubt repainting does not substantially alter appearance) 6. The extent of any disturbance is limited to the minimum required to undertake the activity 7. Complies with the noise standards in the Noise chapter of this Plan 8. The activity does not involve cleaning to remove biofouling, or otherwise complies with the relevant permitted Biosecurity rule of this Plan.	

STR-R8 Removal or demolition of any structure (not involving the use of explosives)

	Activity status: PER Removal or demolition of any abandoned, redundant or unused structure in the coastal marine area that does not involve the use of explosives. <u>Where:</u> 1. The structure is determined to be abandoned or redundant after inquiry 2. It is not located on any shellfish bed or rare or threatened species habitat identified in Schedule 7 3. Disturbance is limited to the minimum required to undertake the activity and the site is restored to its previous state with 48 hours of completing the activity 4. Public access is not restricted, other than temporary restrictions for reasons of public health and safety 5. All redundant material is completely removed from the coastal marine area 6. The structure has no amenity or reuse value 7. There will be no adverse effects on coastal processes or lead to increased erosion or scour 8. It is not located within any historic heritage site listed in Schedule 6 or any other archaeological or wāhi tapu site 9. Will not harm any threatened or at risk species or cause disturbance to any habitat identified in Schedule 7 10. Complies with the noise provisions in the Noise chapter of this Plan.	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **DIS**

STR-R9 Maintenance of existing regionally significant infrastructure

	Activity status: PER Maintenance and operation of existing regionally significant infrastructure.	Activity status where compliance

	Where: 1. The structure is maintained in a safe condition at all times 2. Adequate clearances are maintained for the safe passage of vessels under overhead cables where located above the surface of navigable water measured at Mean High Water Springs 3. The location and/or clearances of overhead or underwater cables shall continue to be adequately indicated on signs erected on both sides of the waterway 4. Any stormwater discharge does not cause erosion or scouring at the point of discharge or in the inter-tidal area 5. Any stormwater structure is either buried or extends no more than one metre into the coastal marine area 6. Any inundation or erosion occurring as a result of and beyond the structure is remedied as soon as practicable 7. Complies with the noise provisions in the Noise chapter.	not achieved: **CON**

Controlled Activities

STR-R10 Minor upgrading or alterations to existing lawful structures

	Activity status: CON Minor upgrading or alterations of an existing lawful structure, and associated vehicle use, in the coastal marine area provided: 1. Any extension or alteration does not add more than 5% overall to the original authorisation and does not increase the existing footprint 2. The activity is necessary to enable safe and efficient operation of infrastructure of national or regional importance 3. Components used are free of harmful aquatic organisms at the time of the activity; and 4. The activity does not cause erosion or scour 5. There is no vehicle use in or on shellfish beds or other habitat identified as a significant value in Schedule 7 6. There is no substantial change in appearance of the structure (for the avoidance of doubt repainting does not substantially alter appearance) 7. Any disturbance to the foreshore is remedied within 48 hours 8. No contaminants are discharged from vehicle use. **Control reserved over** 1. Location, duration, method, timing and notification of works. 2. Design, construction, maintenance and decommissioning of structure. 3. Monitoring and information requirements. 4. Modification of coastal or ecosystem processes. 5. The extent and nature of effects on: a. other authorised structures or activities b. disturbance to the foreshore and seabed c. sediment movement and erosion d. water quality e. natural character and amenity values. f. features and landscape	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **DIS**

	g. shellfish beds or other habitat identified as a significant value in Schedule 7 h. public access i. surfbreaks j. timing and use of vehicles k. navigation l. noise.	

Restricted Discretionary Activities

STR-R11 Structures to protect regionally significant infrastructure

	Activity status: RDIS Erect, construct, occupy or use a hard protection structure in the coastal marine area to protect nationally or regional significant infrastructure. <u>Where:</u> 1. The proposed location and design of the structure is the only practical means to protect the infrastructure that is of national or regional significance 2. The structure is not located within any: a. Seascape (Outstanding Natural Feature and Landscape) are identified Schedule 3 b. Area of Outstanding Natural Character identified in Schedule 4 c. Significant Historic Heritage site or item listed in Schedule 5 d. Sites or areas of Significance to Māori listed in Schedule 6 e. Shellfish beds or any significant indigenous biodiversity area (as identified in Schedule 7) f. Significant surf breaks identified in Schedule 8. **Discretion is restricted to:** 1. Location, method, timing and notification of works 2. Design, construction, maintenance and decommissioning of structure 3. Duration of consent 4. Alternative locations 5. Modification of coastal and ecosystem processes 6. Cumulative effects. 7. Noise. 8. The extent and nature of effects on: a. other authorised structures or activities b. water quality c. sediment movement and erosion d. natural character, features and landscape e. shellfish beds or other marine biodiversity habitat f. amenity values, public access and surfbreaks g. navigation.	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **NC**

Discretionary Activities

STR-R12 Extension or reconstruction of existing lawful structures

	Activity status: DIS Extension or reconstruction of any existing lawful structure. Where: 1. It is not located in any area identified as Historic Heritage listed in Schedule 5, or as a Site or Area of Significance to Māori in Schedule 6 2. It is not located on, or in, an area of significant indigenous biodiversity identified in Schedule 7 3. The existing structure is free of harmful aquatic organisms.	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **NC**

STR-R13 Reconstruction or alteration of a structure after substantial and material damage

	Activity status: DIS Reconstruction or alteration of a structure in the coastal marine area that involves the rebuilding of the structure after substantial and material damage as a result of natural hazard events.	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **NC**

STR-R14 New regionally significant infrastructure

	Activity status: DIS Erect, construct, occupy or use of new regionally significant infrastructure, and associated vehicle use: Where: 1. Pipes are located under the foreshore or seabed 2. The structure is free of harmful aquatic organisms at all times 3. Adequate clearances are maintained for the safe passage of vessels under overhead cables located above the surface of navigable water measured at Mean High Water Springs 4. The location and/or clearances of overhead or underwater cables shall continue to be adequately indicated on signs erected on both sides of the waterway 5. Is not within a high value area, being an area of outstanding natural character, site or area of significance to Māori, or significant biodiversity SIB-A or SIB-B area 6. The structure is maintained in a structurally safe condition at all times 7. The structure is not located in any site of significance to tangata whenua, archaeological or wāhi tapu site 8. The structure does not restrict public access to the coastal marine area 9. No contaminants are discharged to water or land from vehicle use 10. There is no inundation or erosion occurring as a result of the activity and beyond the structure; and 11. The activity complies with the noise provisions in the Noise chapter of this Plan.	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **N/C**

	Control is reserved over 1. Location and alignment with other infrastructure. 2. Monitoring requirements 3. Design of the structure, including the extent to which the structures are designed, constructed and maintained to withstand coastal processes and relative changes in sea level 4. Hazard identification markings, where appropriate. 5. Timing of vehicle use 6. The extent and nature of effects on: a. water quality and biota b. shellfish bed or any other habitat identified as a significant value in Schedule 7 c. disturbance to the foreshore and seabed d. coastal or ecosystem processes e. natural character and amenity values of the area f. scenic, recreational and historic areas, areas of spiritual or cultural significance and regionally important scientific and landscape features.	

STR-R15 Removal or demolition of existing nationally or regionally significant infrastructure

	Activity status: DIS Removal or demolition of infrastructure of national or regional importance: <u>Where:</u> 1. The structure is not located on or within any shellfish bed or any significant marine biodiversity habitat identified in Schedule 7 2. There is no harm to threatened species identified in Schedule 7 3. Any inundation or erosion occurring as a result of and beyond the structure is remedied as soon as practicable.	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **NC**

Non-complying Activities

STR-R16 New hard protection structures

	Activity status: NC Erect, reconstruct, alter, extend a hard protection structure in the coastal marine for the primary purpose of protecting private property.	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **N/A**

STR-R17 Removal or demolition of any structure not otherwise provided for

	Activity status: NC Removal or demolition of any structure in the coastal marine area not otherwise provided for by a rule in this plan.	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **N/A**

Prohibited Activities

STR-R18 Any structure in Firth of Thames RAMSAR site

	Activity status: PR Erection, placement use or occupation of any structure, other than regionally significant infrastructure, in SIB-A Area Firth of Thames RAMSAR site as identified in Schedule 7. (excludes structures or works for flood or erosion control or improvements within the road reserve)

STR-R19 Any structure used for living accommodation

	Activity status: PR Use or occupation in the coastal marine area by any structure used primarily as living accommodation.

20 SB – Surf breaks | Ngā ngaru moana

Overview

Surfing is a significant recreational activity and contributes to the local economy of the region, in areas such as Raglan and Whangamatā, supporting a variety of commercial and tourism activities.

Surf breaks are finite natural features that depend on particular combinations of coastal processes to produce surfable waves.

Four of the 17 nationally significant surf breaks required to be protected by the NZCPS are located in the region, being the Whangamatā Bar, and Manu Bay, Whale Bay and Indicators at Raglan. Surf breaks of both national and regional significance have been identified and mapped in Schedule 8 to the plan.

Activities that may adversely affect surf breaks and swell corridors are required to consider the scale and type of effect in applying for resource consent.

Cross references to other relevant plan provisions

Other chapters contain provisions to consider and address effects on significant surf breaks, these include:

- **Discharges DIS** – in relation to water quality and use of a surf break
- **Disturbance and Deposition DD** – in relation to the deposition or removal of sediment that may effect swell corridors and surf break integrity
- **Public access and recreation PA** – in relation to the use and enjoyment of the CMA.
- **Structures STR** – in relation to activities that may affect swell corridors and surf break integrity

Objectives

SB-O1 Protect significant surf breaks

Significant surf breaks are protected from inappropriate use and development.

Policies

SB-P1 Significant surf breaks

Protect significant surf breaks, and their use and enjoyment by:

1. Avoiding adverse effects on nationally significant surf breaks identified in Schedule 8A.
2. Avoiding significant adverse effects, and avoiding, remedying or mitigating other adverse effects on regionally significant surf breaks identified in Schedule 8B.

SB-P2 Considering effects on surf breaks from activities

Have regard to the following effects on the significant surf breaks in Schedules 8 when considering applications for resource consent that may affect a surf break or swell corridor:

1. Adverse effects on the quality or consistency of the surf break, by considering:
   a. changes to swell within the swell corridor, including reflection, refraction or diffraction of wave energy
   b. changes to natural coastal sediment processes and dynamics
   c. changes to the morphology of the foreshore or seabed.
2. Effects on other qualities that contribute to the use and enjoyment of the surf break including water quality, amenity and cultural heritage and access to the surf break.

Rules

Advisory note:

1. *This chapter contains no rules. The objective and policies for Surf breaks are to be given effect to through the relevant activity rules of the plan.*

Any disturbance to, or deposition on the foreshore or seabed, or any new structure or occupation of space (excluding any navigation safety structures, or structures or occupation associated with temporary recreational events), or any discharge of contaminants to the CMA within a significant surf break overlay is a discretionary activity.

21 WT – Water take, use, divert and discharge | Herenga, whakamahinga, kaupare me te rukenga ā-wai

Overview

The coastal marine area and its resources are important taonga to tangata whenua. Water quality, which underpins the well-being of the coastal marine area and the ability to use the resources of the coastal marine area, is fundamental to all aspects of tangata whenua well-being.

Coastal activities such as food gathering, recreation, tourism and aquaculture rely on water quality being of a safe standard. Amenity values and the intrinsic values of the coast are also influenced by whether there is clean coastal water.

Discharges are a significant source of contaminants that can affect water quality. Discharges into the coastal marine area can occur from municipal facilities, process water discharges, construction activities, boat and structure maintenance activities and vessel discharges and stormwater. Common contaminants discharged include fuel and oil, suspended solids, heavy metals, synthetic and naturally occurring organic compounds, sewage, micro-organisms, and litter.

The majority of discharges to the Waikato CMA are stormwater based. Stormwater has the potential to transport contaminants into coastal waters via surface run-off or stormwater pipe discharges.

The Plan includes a range of provisions to manage coastal water quality. The adverse effects of these activities and discharges are managed through rules on discharges and, in most circumstances stormwater treatment requirements on land use activities, at source. The focus of this chapter is specifically on discharges to the coastal marine area, the objective of maintaining coastal water quality (including benthic sediment) where it is excellent or good and to progressively improve water quality in degraded areas over time. This approach recognises the coastal marine area is the ultimate receiving environment for many of the contaminants generated on and discharged from land.

Discharges to waterways and land can also affect coastal water quality but are regulated under the Waikato Regional Plan.

Cross references to other relevant plan provisions

Other chapters contain provisions for activities that may generate adverse effects on coastal water quality, these include:

- **Aquaculture AQA** – in relation to discharges from aquaculture activities.
- **Biosecurity BIO** – in relation to discharges from vessel hulls and maintenance activities for vessels and structures.
- **Disturbance and Deposition DD** – in relation to mining, disturbance of foreshore and seabed or deposition of dredged material.
- **Marinas MAR** – in relation to operational activities, boat servicing and maintenance activities, and stormwater discharges.
- **Natural Hazards NH** – in relation to effects of structural protection works.

- **Structures STR** – in relation to placement, management and maintenance activities.

Objectives – Dam, Divert, Take, Use

WT-O1 Damming, or diversion of coastal water

Damming or diversion of coastal water should not cause adverse environmental, social or cultural effects.

WT-O2 Take and Use of Water

Coastal water is taken or used at a quantity and rate that protects water quality, marine fauna, ecosystems, social and cultural values, and coastal processes.

Policies – Dam, Divert, Take, Use

WT-P1 Damming and diverting water

Ensure damming or diversion of coastal water occurs only where the activity:

1. Avoids adverse effects on the values and mauri of the coastal water
2. Avoids significant adverse effect on ecosystem values
3. Avoids adverse effects on social and cultural values
4. Has a functional need to occur in that vicinity.

WT-P2 Minor take and use of water

Provide for minor uses of coastal water where the activity has only minor effects on the values and mauri of the coastal water including biodiversity and ecosystem values.

WT-P3 Other takes and use of water

Provide for the take and use of coastal water where the activity does not:

1. Significantly adversely affect the values and mauri of the coastal water including marine fauna and ecosystem values
2. Interfere with natural coastal processes.

Rules – Dam, Divert, Take, Use

Permitted Activities

WT-R1 Taking and use of water by ships

	Activity status: PER The taking and use of water from the coastal marine area for the normal functional need of ships for engine cooling, loading ballast, deck washing, firefighting and de-salination.	Activity status where compliance not achieved:

WT-R2 Taking and use of coastal water less than 1,000m^3

	Activity status: PER The taking and use of water from the coastal marine area. Where: 1. The take occurs in open coastal waters; and/or 2. The take occurs in estuaries, inlets, harbours or embayments and the quantities taken and used are less than 1,000 cubic metres per day; and 3. Screening or filtering devices shall be used to ensure no intake of marine fauna or flora.	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **RD**

Restricted Discretionary Activities

WT-R3 Take and use coastal water greater than 1,000m^3

	Activity status: RD The taking and use of water from estuaries, inlets, harbours or embayments, in quantities equal to or greater than 1,000 cubic metres per day Where: 1. Screening or filtering devices shall be used to ensure no intake of marine fauna or flora 2. The take shall not adversely affect or interfere with other lawfully established takes or uses. **Matters of discretion:** 1. The information and monitoring requirements 2. The location of the take and proximity to, and effects on, other activities 3. The take rate - including frequency 4. The method used for the take and the proposed screening and/or filtering devices 5. Adverse effects on biodiversity, social and cultural values.	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **DIS**

Objectives – Discharges

DIS-O1 Discharges to coastal water

All discharges to the coastal marine area, both individually and cumulatively, protect the values, mauri and life supporting capacity of the receiving environment.

Policies – Discharges

DIS-P1 Discharge of contaminants to the coastal marine area

Discharges of contaminants to the coastal marine area are managed to:

1. Avoid significant adverse effects, including cumulative effects, on aquatic life, habitats, feeding grounds, kaimoana (including shellfish gathering), ecosystems, surf breaks, contact recreation and amenity values
2. Occur in a manner that recognises and provides for the cultural values of tangata whenua
3. Minimise adverse effects on the life-supporting capacity of water within the mixing zone, including the ability to support indigenous flora and fauna and kaimoana beds
4. Avoid the discharge of persistent toxic contaminants into the environment including those that accumulate in sediment, and where avoidance cannot be practically achieved, the adverse effects of such discharges must be mitigated or remedied
5. Avoid, remedy, or mitigate adverse effects on the stability of the coastal environment, including localised erosion and scour resulting from the discharge
6. Not individually or cumulatively with other discharges result in meeting or exceeding trigger values identified in Schedule 9
7. Have particular regard to:
    a. The sensitivity of the receiving environment
    b. The capacity of the receiving environment to assimilate contaminants
    c. The nature of the contaminants to be discharged, the existing water quality in the receiving environment as compared with the trigger levels identified in Schedule 9, and the risks if that concentration of contaminants is exceeded.

DIS-P2 Discharges into the Firth of Thames

Encourage improvements to discharges that will improve water quality in the Firth of Thames.

DIS-P3 Extent of mixing zone for discharges

Minimise the extent of the mixing zone for discharges to reduce the effects on the life-supporting capacity and cultural, economic and recreational values of water within the mixing zone. Mixing zone extent shall be determined on a case by case basis including consideration of:

1. The location, water quality type, values and uses of the receiving water
2. The nature of the discharge, including its frequency, flow rate, composition and contaminant concentrations
3. Maori cultural values
4. The design of the outfall and rate of discharge (e.g. single or multi-point diffuser)
5. The depth of water over the outfall
6. The density difference between the discharge (usually freshwater) and the receiving water (often saline) which determines its buoyancy
7. Speed and orientation of currents across the outfall
8. Degree of stratification in the water column which may limit vertical mixing
9. Existing contaminant concentrations in the receiving water, the assimilative capacity of the water body and the trigger values for contaminants identified in Schedule 9.

DIS-P4 Disposal of human ashes

Avoid the discharge and disposal of human ashes into the coastal marine area in the vicinity of culturally significant locations.

DIS-P5 Untreated human sewage

Avoid the discharge of untreated human sewage directly into coastal marine area from land based activities.

DIS-P6 Discharge of treated human sewage

Avoid the discharge of treated human sewage directly to coastal water from sources other than ships, vessels and offshore installations that comply with Marine Pollution Regulations unless:

1. The treatment method Includes the passing of sewage through land, soil or a wetland or uses an alternative technology and disposal methodology that is addresses cultural values
2. The discharge avoids kaimoana gathering areas or recreational beaches.
3. The discharge is consistent with Policy 23(2)(b) of the NZCPS
4. There is a functional need to discharge in that location.

DIS-P7 Discharge of sewage from vessels

Avoid the discharge of human sewage from vessels into coastal marine area in areas identified as vessel sewage restriction areas on the Planning Maps.

DIS-P8 Facilities at marinas and wharves

Require marinas and public wharves to have facilities available for:

1. the appropriate shore-based disposal of contaminants associated with the operation and maintenance of vessels including for refuelling of vessels and human waste disposal
2. Ensuring that boat maintenance activities are managed to avoid the discharge of toxic or hazardous substances directly or indirectly to coastal water.

DIS-P9 Discharges from boat maintenance activities

Avoid the discharge of toxic or hazardous substances from boat maintenance activities directly to foreshore or coastal water.

DIS-P10 Discharges of hazardous substances

Avoid discharges of hazardous substances to the coastal marine area except where:
1. the application is required for controlling pest species, and
2. the compound is approved for use over water by HSNO, and
3. The compound is applied in accordance with best practice.

DIS-P11 Stormwater Management

Avoid as far as practicable, or otherwise minimise or mitigate adverse effects of stormwater discharges through:
1. Having particular regard to:
    a. the nature, quality, volume and peak flow of the stormwater runoff
    b. the current state of receiving environments including the nature and sensitivity to the adverse effects of the discharge, including hydrological effects and contaminants and how these can be minimised and mitigated

c. options to manage stormwater on-site or the use of communal stormwater management measures
d. practical limitations in respect of the measures that can be applied.

2. Requiring management plans including design, operation, maintenance, and monitoring activities that demonstrate how the discharge is:
   a. taking an integrated stormwater management approach
   b. adopting the relevant best practice options towards stormwater treatment
   c. minimising the generation and discharge of contaminants at source prior to the consideration of mitigation measures and the optimisation of on-site and larger communal devices where these are required
   d. using and enhancing natural hydrological features and green infrastructure for stormwater management where practicable
   e. minimising or mitigating changes in hydrology and effects on coastal water quality
   f. where practicable minimising or mitigating the effects on the receiving environment arising from changes in water temperature caused by stormwater discharges
   g. providing for the management of gross stormwater pollutants (e.g. litter in areas where the generation of these may be an issue)
   h. addressing mitigation and monitoring of residual adverse effects on the receiving environment.

DIS-P12 Stormwater from car parks, roads, boat yards and high risk facilities

Manage contaminants in stormwater runoff from high contaminant generating boat maintenance areas, high risk facilities, car parks and roads as discrete individual discharges to minimise new adverse effects and progressively reduce existing adverse effects on water and sediment quality in coastal waters, including by the use of relevant best practice requirements.

Rules – Discharges

Permitted Activities

DIS-R1 Minor permitted discharges

	Activity status: PER The discharge of water containing contaminants to the coastal marine area. <u>Where:</u> 1. Any visible change in water quality shall not be detectable 12 hours after discharge 2. The discharge shall not cause any breach of water quality standards in Schedule 9 outside of the mixing zone 3. The discharge shall not contain any hazardous substances or come from a high risk facility 4. The discharge shall not contain any material which will cause the production of conspicuous oil or grease films, scums or foams, or floatable suspended materials outside a 5 metre radius of the point of discharge 5. The natural temperature of the water shall not be changed by more than 3 degrees Celsius 6. The natural salinity of water within sensitive intertidal zones shall not be altered outside of a 20m radius of discharge point 7. The discharge shall not cause erosion or scouring	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **DIS**

	8. The discharge shall not occur in or at any area identified as wāhi tapu 9. The discharge does not give rise to significant adverse effects on marine, estuarine or coastal ecosystems.	

DIS-R2 Firefighting and emergency response discharges

	Activity status: PER The discharge from firefighting and other emergency response activities undertaken by Fire and Emergency New Zealand or the New Zealand Defence Force (including discharge of hazardous substances). <u>Where:</u> 1. The discharge does not give rise to significant adverse effects on marine, estuarine or coastal ecosystems.	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **DIS**

DIS-R3 Small discharges of dye tracers

	Activity status: PER The discharge of less than 20 litres of dye in solution dye tracer material, excluding radioisotope tracers, into the coastal marine: <u>Where:</u> 1. The dye tracer material discharged shall not be a hazardous substance in terms of the Hazardous Substances and New Organisms Act 1996. 2. The discharge shall not cause fish or shellfish to be unsuitable for harvest and human consumption. 3. The discharge shall not have adverse effects on indigenous biodiversity. 4. The discharge shall not occur in or be intended to spread to any area identified as wāhi tapu or area of cultural significance. 5. The dye tracer material shall be used in accordance with manufacturers' specifications.	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **CON**

Controlled Activities

DIS-R4 Discharge of dye tracers

	Activity status: CON The discharge of more than 20 litres of dye in solution dye tracer material, excluding radioisotope tracers, into the coastal marine area. <u>Where:</u> 1. The dye tracer material discharged shall not be a hazardous substance in terms of the Hazardous Substances and New Organisms Act 1996 2. The discharge shall not cause fish or shellfish to be unsuitable for harvest and human consumption 3. The discharge shall not have adverse effects on indigenous biodiversity 4. The discharge shall not occur in or be intended to spread to any area identified as wāhi tapu or area of cultural significance	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **DIS**

	5. The dye tracer material shall be used in accordance with manufacturers' specifications. **Matters of Control:** 1. The location, timing, volume and method of discharge.	

Restricted Discretionary Activities

DIS-R5 Discharge from vessel hull cleaning

	Activity status: RD Discharge of material or organisms from the cleaning, scraping, sanding, or blasting of a vessel hull on the foreshore. <u>Where:</u> 1. The discharge shall be contained and collected, for removal to an approved land-based disposal facility 2. The activity shall not occur in any significant indigenous biodiversity area identified in Schedule 7 3. Any vehicle use must not damage any threatened or at risk species or any indigenous vegetation, shellfish bed or other significant indigenous biodiversity area identified in Schedule 7. **Assessment criteria** 1. The purpose of the cleaning and whether the bio-fouling to be removed contains unwanted organisms 2. The method(s) to be used to clean the hull 3. The adequacy of the proposed procedures and equipment for containment of discharged material 4. Proximity of the maintenance site to any habitat identified in Schedule 7.	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **DIS**

Discretionary Activities

DIS-R6 Discharge of contaminants not otherwise provided for

	Activity status: DIS Discharge of contaminants or water containing contaminants into the coastal marine area not identified as permitted, controlled or restricted discretionary elsewhere in this Plan.	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **N/A**

DIS-R7 Discharge of hazardous substances

	Activity status: DIS The use and discharge of hazardous substances except those specifically exempted under RMA Regulations, and those specifically for biosecurity purposes.	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **NC**

DIS-R8 **Discharge from high risk facilities to the coastal marine area**

	Activity status: DIS The discharge of treated wastewater including stormwater from high risk facilities to coastal water.	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **NC**

DIS-R9 **Discharge of treated sewage to the CMA**

	Activity status: DIS The discharge of treated human sewage directly to coastal water from sources other than ships, vessels and offshore installations that comply with Marine Pollution Regulations Where: 1. the treatment method Includes the passing of sewage through land, soil or a wetland or uses an alternative technology and disposal methodology that addresses cultural values; and 2. the discharge avoids kaimoana areas and recreational beaches/surf breaks. 3. The discharge is consistent with Policy 23 (2) (b) of the NZCPS 4. There are no practicable alternative land based discharge methods.	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **NC**

Prohibited Activities

DIS-R10 **Discharge of Human Ashes**

	Activity status: PRO Any discharge of human ashes into an area within 500m of an area of cultural significance or an area of aquaculture.

DIS-R11 **Discharge of human effluent and Wastewater**

	Activity status: PRO Unless authorised by other rules of this plan, the discharge of untreated sewage to the coastal marine area is a prohibited activity.

Stormwater

Permitted Activities

DIS-R12 **Stormwater discharge from existing impervious surfaces**

	Activity status: PER The diversion and discharge of stormwater runoff from lawfully established impervious areas as of 1 October 2022 to the coastal marine area not directed to a stormwater network Where: 1. Flows, volumes and contaminant loadings of stormwater discharged are not changed a result of any land use changes 2. The discharge is not from a high risk facility or dedicated boat maintenance area	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **DIS**

	3. The discharge does not cause or increase scouring or erosion at the point of discharge 4. The diversion and discharge of stormwater runoff must not give rise to the following in coastal water: a. the production of conspicuous oil or grease films, scums or foams, or floatable or suspended materials; b. any conspicuous change in the colour or visual clarity; c. any emission of objectionable odour; or d. any significant adverse effects on marine, estuarine or coastal ecosystems. 5. Existing stormwater treatment devices are maintained and consistent with best practice.	

DIS-R13 Stormwater discharge from roads up to 5000m^2

	Activity status: PER The discharge of stormwater into the coastal marine area from impervious areas up to 5,000m^2 of road (which include road ancillary areas that are part of a road, motorway or state highway operated by a road controlling authority) or rail corridor. <u>Where:</u> 1. The discharge does not cause or increase scouring or erosion at the point of discharge 2. The diversion and discharge of stormwater runoff must not give rise to the following in coastal water: a. the production of conspicuous oil or grease films, scums or foams, or floatable or suspended materials; b. any conspicuous change in the colour or visual clarity; c. any emission of objectionable odour; or d. any significant adverse effects on on marine, estuarine or coastal ecosystems. 3. Design of stormwater management devices are consistent with best practice 4. Road verges are not used for storage of roading or building materials that are not inert for more than 30 days continuously, or for works/building yards.	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **DIS**

DIS-R14 Stormwater discharge from rural production activities

	Activity status: PER The discharge of stormwater runoff from compacted metal surfaces ancillary to rural production activities, including hardstands and tracks into the coastal marine area. <u>Where:</u> 1. The discharge does not cause or increase scouring or erosion at the point of discharge 2. The diversion and discharge of stormwater runoff must not give rise to the following in coastal water: a. the production of conspicuous oil or grease films, scums or foams, or floatable or suspended materials; b. any conspicuous change in the colour or visual clarity;	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **DIS**

	c. any emission of objectionable odour; or d. any significant adverse effects on marine, estuarine or coastal ecosystems. 3. Design of stormwater management device are consistent with best practice.	

DIS-R15 Stormwater discharge from impervious area outside urban area

	Activity status: PER The discharge of stormwater runoff from impervious areas up to 5,000m^2 outside an urban area into the coastal marine area <u>Where:</u> 1. The discharge does not cause or increase scouring or erosion at the point of discharge 2. The diversion and discharge of stormwater runoff must not give rise to the following in coastal water: a. the production of conspicuous oil or grease films, scums or foams, or floatable or suspended materials; b. any conspicuous change in the colour or visual clarity; c. any emission of objectionable odour; or d. any significant adverse effects on marine, estuarine or coastal ecosystems. 3. Design of stormwater management devices are consistent with best practice 4. The discharge is not from a high risk facility 5. The total impervious area excludes unsealed or gravelled tracks 6. Connection to a stormwater network is not practicable.	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **DIS**

DIS-R16 Stormwater discharge from impervious areas up to 1,000m^2

	Activity status: PER The discharge of stormwater runoff into the coastal marine area from impervious areas up to 1,000m^2 within an urban area where a connection to a stormwater network is not possible. <u>Where:</u> 1. The discharge does not cause or increase scouring or erosion at the point of discharge 2. The diversion and discharge of stormwater runoff must not give rise to the following in coastal water: a. the production of conspicuous oil or grease films, scums or foams, or floatable or suspended materials; b. any conspicuous change in the colour or visual clarity; c. any emission of objectionable odour; or d. any significant adverse effects on aquatic life. 3. Design of stormwater management device are consistent with best practice 4. The discharge is not from a high risk facility	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **DIS**

Controlled Activities

DIS-R17 Stormwater discharge from urban areas 1000m^2 to 5000m^2

	Activity status: CON Discharge of stormwater of stormwater runoff into the coastal marine area from impervious areas greater than 1,000m^2 and up to 5,000m^2 within an urban area. Where: 1. The discharge does not cause or increase scouring or erosion at the point of discharge 2. The diversion and discharge of stormwater runoff must not give rise to the following in any surface water or coastal water: a. the production of conspicuous oil or grease films, scums or foams, or floatable or suspended materials; b. any conspicuous change in the colour or visual clarity; c. any emission of objectionable odour; or d. any significant adverse effects on marine, estuarine or coastal ecosystems. 3. Design of stormwater management devices are provided that reduce or remove contaminants from the impervious area to the maximum extent consistent with best practice 4. The discharge is not from a high risk facility. **Matters of Control:** 1. Management of adverse effects on receiving environments 2. Management of stormwater flows and contaminants including methods to minimise contaminants and where appropriate the use of stormwater management devices 3. Measures to avoid erosion, scour and flood risk 4. Location of the discharge point(s) and method of discharge and disposal 5. Operation and maintenance requirements 6. Monitoring and reporting 7. Duration of the consent and the timing and nature of reviews of consent conditions.	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **DIS**

Restricted Discretionary Activities

DIS-R18 Stormwater discharge from roads greater than 5000m^2

	Activity status: RD Discharge of stormwater runoff from additional impervious areas greater than 5,000m^2 of road (which include road ancillary areas that are part of a road, motorway or state highway operated by a road controlling authority) or rail corridor. Where: 1. The discharge does not cause or increase scouring or erosion at the point of discharge 2. The diversion and discharge of stormwater runoff must not give rise to the following in any coastal water:	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **DIS**

	a. the production of conspicuous oil or grease films, scums or foams, or floatable or suspended materials; b. any conspicuous change in the colour or visual clarity; c. any emission of objectionable odour; or d. any significant adverse effects on marine, estuarine or coastal ecosystems. 3. Design of stormwater management devices must be provided to reduce or remove contaminants from stormwater runoff that are consistent with best practice 4. Where stormwater runoff is directed to an existing stormwater network, including road side drainages, swales and catchpits, these must be managed and maintained to ensure effective operation and to prevent erosion, sediment generation and discharge 5. Road verges are not used for storage of roading or building materials that are not inert for more than 30 days continuously, or for works/building yards. **Matters of discretion:** 1. Methods proposed for the management of the adverse effects on receiving environments, including cumulative effects, having regard to: a. the nature, volume and peak flow of the stormwater runoff discharge b. the sensitivity of the receiving environment to stormwater runoff contaminants and flows c. the extent to which opportunities to reduce existing adverse effects and enhance receiving environments have been identified and utilised d. the extent to which effects on marine sediment quality, are avoided, remedied or mitigated. 2. Measures proposed for the management of the adverse effects of the stormwater runoff diversion and discharge on receiving environments having regard to best practicable options 3. Measures proposed for the implementation of stormwater management devices and other measures and programmes that give effect to the best practicable option; 4. Measures to avoid erosion and scour at outfall 5. Methods proposed for the management of stormwater flow 6. Contaminants and for the implementation of stormwater management devices and other measures 7. The extent to which effects on tangata whenua values are avoided remedied or mitigated 8. Monitoring and reporting requirements to ensure that any performance failures are addressed without undue delay 9. Proposed duration of the consent and the timing and nature of reviews of consent conditions having regard to: a. the need to periodically reassess the consent to take account of any changes in the nature of the discharge or the receiving environment	

	b. the need to set duration and review periods having regard to efficiency and effectiveness.	

DIS-R19 Municipal comprehensive stormwater discharge

	Activity status: RD Discharge of stormwater runoff from a municipal urban area under a Comprehensive Stormwater Discharge Consent; <u>Where:</u> 1. The discharge does not cause or increase scouring or erosion at the point of discharge 2. The diversion and discharge of stormwater runoff must not give rise to the following in any coastal water: a. the production of conspicuous oil or grease films, scums or foams, or floatable or suspended materials; b. any conspicuous change in the colour or visual clarity; c. any emission of objectionable odour; or d. any significant adverse effects on marine, estuarine or coastal ecosystems. 3. Design of stormwater management system must be provided to reduce or remove contaminants from stormwater runoff that are consistent with best practice 4. A comprehensive catchment management plan 5. A stormwater network management plan is supplied that details how network will be managed and maintained to ensure effective operation and to prevent erosion, sediment generation and adverse effects of contaminants in the discharge. **Matters of discretion:** 1. Methods proposed for the management of the adverse effects on receiving environments, including cumulative effects, having regard to: a. the nature, volume and peak flow of the stormwater runoff discharge b. the sensitivity of the receiving environment to stormwater runoff contaminants and flows c. the extent to which opportunities to reduce existing adverse effects and enhance receiving environments have been identified and utilised d. the extent to which effects on marine sediment quality, are avoided, remedied or mitigated. 2. Measures proposed for the management of the adverse effects of the stormwater runoff diversion and discharge on receiving environments having regard to best practicable options 3. Measures proposed for the implementation of stormwater management devices and other measures and programmes that give effect to the best practicable option 4. Measures to avoid erosion and scour at outfall 5. Methods proposed for the management of stormwater flow and contaminants and for the implementation of stormwater management devices and other measures	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **DIS**

	6. The extent to which effects on tangata whenua values are avoided remedied or mitigated; 7. Monitoring and reporting requirements to ensure that any performance failures are addressed without undue delay; and the proposed duration of the consent and the timing and nature of reviews of consent conditions having regard to: a. the need to periodically reassess the consent to take account of any changes in the nature of the discharge or the receiving environment b. the need to set duration and review periods having regard to efficiency and effectiveness.	

Discretionary Activities

DIS-R20 Other stormwater discharges

	Activity status: DIS All other discharges of stormwater runoff not otherwise provided for.	Activity status where compliance not achieved: **N/A**

22 WQ – Water quality | Kounga wai

Overview

Coastal water is valued for a number of aspects and activities. These include ecosystem/ aquatic health, natural character, recreational contact, aquaculture and kaimoana gathering, as well as the cultural value and mauri of the water itself.

Water quality within the coastal marine area reflects discharges from land and freshwater across a diverse number of catchments in the Waikato region. Land use change, increasing land use intensity and urban development is placing pressure on the region's coastal receiving environments. One of the key issues affecting the Hauraki Gulf (Tikapa Moana) is water quality degradation and ecosystem decline as a consequence of development in Gulf catchments.

The majority of contaminants affecting coastal water quality are a consequence of land based activities and discharges to freshwater, which are not controlled under this Plan.

The draft Regional Coastal Plan identifies three water classification types – open coast, estuaries and the Firth of Thames. Water quality is required to be maintained or enhanced to support the natural functioning of ecosystems, the mauri of water, and the cultural, economic and social values of coastal water.

The New Zealand Coastal Policy Statement 2010 requires areas where coastal water quality has deteriorated to be identified and provisions to restore the water quality to support relevant activities, ecosystems and natural habitats.

The Firth of Thames is identified as a degraded water body. Activities within the Firth of Thames need to demonstrate they are not contributing to further degradation, and are, if anything, improving water quality.

Cross references to other relevant plan provisions

Other chapters contain provisions for activities that may affect water quality, these include:

- **Aquaculture AQA** – while aquaculture relies on high water quality, some forms of aquaculture may have potential effects on coastal water quality
- **Disturbance and Deposition DD** – in relation to mining, dredging and deposition activities
- **Structures STR** – which relates to structures which may result in a discharge.
- **Water Take, Use, Divert, Dam, Discharge DIS** – covering interactions with water that potentially affect water quality and values.

Objectives

WQ-O1 Maintain high water quality

Water quality is maintained where it is good and improved in degraded areas.

WQ-O2 Protect the mauri and life supporting capacity of coastal water

The life-supporting capacity, mauri and values of coastal water is protected and, where appropriate, enhanced.

Policies

WQ-P1 Coastal water quality

Maintain coastal water quality where it is good, or enhance coastal water quality where it is degraded by avoiding, remedying and mitigating the adverse effects of activities on:

1. The life-supporting capacity of coastal water
2. The mauri and wairua of coastal water
3. The integrity and functioning of natural coastal processes
4. The ability of coastal water to provide for public use and enjoyment.

WQ-P2 Set minimum water quality standards

Set minimum standards for coastal waters to ensure that environmental, social, economic and cultural values are maintained or enhanced.

WQ-P3 Water quality classifications and trigger levels

Apply the classifications and associated water quality standards and trigger levels contained in Schedule 9 so that:

1. Where existing water quality is better than the trigger levels, no degradation of existing water quality occurs
2. In areas where water quality does not meet the trigger levels or where coastal water values are being significantly adversely affected, water quality is enhanced by reducing cumulative contaminant loads by activities
3. In all circumstances maintain or enhance water quality by ensuring mixing zones are minimised and best practicable option to reduce any adverse effects are adopted.

WQ-P4 Reasonable mixing

Use the smallest mixing zone necessary in order to minimise adverse effects on the life-supporting capacity and cultural, economic and recreational values of water within the mixing zone.

WQ-P5 Degraded Areas of Water

In areas identified as degraded, activities potentially affecting water quality shall demonstrate how they will improve water quality and adopt the best practicable option to reduce effects including cumulative effects.

WQ-P6 Firth of Thames

Require activities seeking resource consent within the Firth of Thames to demonstrate they will not contribute to any further degradation of water quality, and acknowledge where activities will assist to improve coastal water quality.

WQ-P7 Review of Consent Conditions

In areas where monitoring indicates that water quality standards are being breached and/or trigger values for toxicants are potentially being met or exceeded, a review of consent conditions for activities in that area should be undertaken to reduce the cumulative loading of all discharges.

Rules

Advisory note:

1. *This chapter contains no rules. The objectives and policies for Water Quality are to be given effect to through the relevant activity rules of the plan.*

PART 3 – APPENDICES AND MAPS | WĀHANGA 3 – NGĀ ĀPITIHANGA ME NGĀ MAHERE

Schedule 1 – Coastal Marine Area and River Mouth Boundaries | Āpiti 1 – Ngā rohenga takutai moana me ngā ngutuawa

The landward boundary of the coastal marine area and the river mouth for each of the rivers included in in Schedule 1 was agreed and set by the Waikato Regional Council, the relevant territorial authorities and the Department of Conservation in 1994.

For rivers and streams not identified in this schedule, the agreed and set "mouth", for the purposes of section 2 of the RMA, is a straight line representing a continuation of the mean high water springs on each side of the river.

The river mouths and coastal marine area boundary for the rivers and streams included in this schedule are shown on the maps that accompany this Plan.

Area	River/Stream
West Coast - Waitomo District	Awakino River Mokau River
West Coast - Waitomo District	Waikawau River
West Coast - Waitomo District	Marokopa River Kiritehere Stream
Kawhia - Waitomo and Otorohanga Districts	Manawatuhatuha Stream Mangaora Stream Oparau River Te Kauri Stream Awaroa River Waiharakeke Stream Matauwai Stream Wainui Stream
Aotea - Waikato and Otorohanga Districts	Pakoka River Makomako Stream
Raglan - Waikato District	Ohautira Stream Waitetuna River Wainui Stream
West Coast - Franklin District	Kaawa Stream
West Coast - Franklin District	Waikato River
Firth of Thames - Hauraki and Thames Coromandel Districts	Waitakaruru Canal Piako River Waihou River

	Kauaeranga River
Coromandel West Coast - Thames Coromandel District	Waiomu Stream
Coromandel West Coast - Thames Coromandel District	Waikawau River Te Mata River Tapu River
Manaia - Thames Coromandel District	Manaia River
Coromandel - Thames Coromandel District	Whangarahi Stream Waiau River
Kennedy Bay - Thames Coromandel District	Harataunga Stream
Colville & Waikawau - Thames Coromandel District	Umangawha Stream Waikawau River
Port Charles - Thames Coromandel District	Tangiaro Stream Parakete Stream
Kennedy Bay & Whangapoua - Thames Coromandel District	Harataunga Stream Opitonui River Mapauriki Stream
Kuaotunu to Otama - Thames Coromandel District	Kuaotunu River Otama River
Whitianga - Thames Coromandel District	Taputapuatea Stream Whangamaroro River Ounuora River Waiwawa River Whenuakite River
Tairua - Thames Coromandel District	Tairua River
Wharekawa - Thames Coromandel District	Wharekawa River
Whangamata - Thames Coromandel District	Wentworth River Otahu River (Waiharakeke Stream)

Schedule 2 – Mooring Areas | Āpiti 2 – Ngā wāhi pou herenga waka

EAST COAST MOORING AREAS

Mooring Area	longitude	latitude
COROMANDEL		
Te Kouma Harbour	175° 26' 59.19975049" E	36° 49' 43.72078212" S
	175° 26' 59.92728886" E	36° 49' 47.63884160" S
	175° 26' 52.47117354" E	36° 49' 48.87748618" S
	175° 26' 51.85861127" E	36° 49' 44.78267374" S
	175° 26' 59.19975049" E	36° 49' 43.72078212" S
Takawhare Bay East	175° 28' 13.90866212" E	36° 48' 22.86278451" S
	175° 28' 15.64307968" E	36° 48' 25.84917458" S
	175° 28' 10.18576906" E	36° 48' 35.22368109" S
	175° 28' 05.95655173" E	36° 48' 35.58277973" S
	175° 28' 05.34818064" E	36° 48' 34.64605720" S
	175° 28' 07.74779276" E	36° 48' 23.08767276" S
	175° 28' 13.90866212" E	36° 48' 22.86278451" S
Takawhare Bay West	175° 28' 05.02386223" E	36° 48' 23.04737036" S
	175° 28' 02.88702026" E	36° 48' 36.78962190" S
	175° 28' 01.41469696" E	36° 48' 37.83735509" S
	175° 27' 59.03945900" E	36° 48' 37.78009327" S
	175° 27' 54.51673619" E	36° 48' 37.25393436" S
	175° 27' 50.27787850" E	36° 48' 35.81123585" S
	175° 27' 45.68135729" E	36° 48' 32.98092737" S
	175° 27' 44.62494391" E	36° 48' 24.82670086" S
	175° 27' 55.44497903" E	36° 48' 22.62618208" S
	175° 28' 05.02386223" E	36° 48' 23.04737036" S
Puhi Rare Bay	175° 29' 10.67262677" E	36° 48' 11.43480823" S
	175° 29' 06.23200710" E	36° 48' 15.67383754" S
	175° 28' 59.50417072" E	36° 48' 16.24069061" S
	175° 28' 47.81361204" E	36° 48' 06.37122266" S
	175° 28' 41.91399288" E	36° 48' 05.71928816" S
	175° 28' 41.08259023" E	36° 47' 50.39190827" S
	175° 29' 08.96264158" E	36° 47' 49.84851570" S
	175° 29' 10.67262677" E	36° 48' 11.43480823" S
Wyuna & McGregor Bay	175° 27' 54.91915413" E	36° 45' 44.99174211" S
	175° 28' 17.89014710" E	36° 45' 34.44000598" S
	175° 28' 27.58061075" E	36° 45' 37.76468305" S
	175° 28' 32.92823924" E	36° 45' 43.81454328" S
	175° 28' 39.62420196" E	36° 45' 51.34747048" S
	175° 28' 42.63541264" E	36° 45' 55.12091014" S
	175° 28' 33.43892932" E	36° 45' 59.69119662" S
	175° 28' 15.03757386" E	36° 46' 08.59886903" S

	175° 28' 11.62784536" E	36° 46' 04.40726594" S
	175° 28' 04.83223864" E	36° 46' 02.76589674" S
	175° 28' 04.63225857" E	36° 46' 02.53754958" S
Oamaru Bay	175° 27' 50.96813606" E	36° 44' 06.35887543" S
	175° 27' 54.83090651" E	36° 44' 03.70197537" S
	175° 27' 59.74518124" E	36° 44' 04.56883799" S
	175° 28' 04.59354513" E	36° 44' 09.38947786" S
	175° 27' 56.51415999" E	36° 44' 16.43511720" S
	175° 27' 50.38443989" E	36° 44' 09.93594287" S
	175° 27' 50.96813606" E	36° 44' 06.35887543" S
Long Bay	175° 28' 15.53451002" E	36° 44' 51.05068300" S
	175° 28' 20.76121521" E	36° 44' 51.87204452" S
	175° 28' 17.99654032" E	36° 44' 58.74944144" S
	175° 28' 12.76101620" E	36° 44' 57.65698584" S
	175° 28' 12.80540842" E	36° 44' 57.53981581" S
	175° 28' 15.53451002" E	36° 44' 51.05068300" S
PORT CHARLES		
Port Charles - Carey Bay	175° 28' 17.13684397" E	36° 31' 08.19535897" S
	175° 28' 17.41263719" E	36° 31' 12.33597868" S
	175° 28' 12.01572353" E	36° 31' 12.46721244" S
	175° 28' 11.61760349" E	36° 31' 08.25161919" S
	175° 28' 17.13684397" E	36° 31' 08.19535897" S
Port Charles - Jetty North	175° 27' 55.25268925" E	36° 31' 24.16588057" S
	175° 27' 57.29184698" E	36° 31' 24.12370147" S
	175° 27' 56.53056574" E	36° 31' 27.74327710" S
	175° 27' 55.35472960" E	36° 31' 27.75791095" S
	175° 27' 55.25268925" E	36° 31' 24.16588057" S
Port Charles - Jetty South	175° 27' 55.07112320" E	36° 31' 29.03286740" S
	175° 27' 58.38120123" E	36° 31' 28.94502048" S
	175° 27' 58.52511780" E	36° 31' 32.34242796" S
	175° 27' 55.26175397" E	36° 31' 32.39055958" S
	175° 27' 55.07112320" E	36° 31' 29.03286740" S
Port Charles - Little Sandy Bay	175° 28' 05.52624757" E	36° 31' 38.86265719" S
	175° 28' 10.67423231" E	36° 31' 38.81415508" S
	175° 28' 08.18541208" E	36° 31' 43.21549005" S
	175° 28' 06.04953706" E	36° 31' 43.24034881" S
	175° 28' 05.52624757" E	36° 31' 38.86265719" S
KENNEDY BAY		
Kennedy Bay	175° 34' 16.82092476" E	36° 40' 11.08732818" S
	175° 34' 22.79026109" E	36° 40' 11.22956263" S
	175° 34' 22.74022888" E	36° 40' 14.05933185" S
	175° 34' 16.86567596" E	36° 40' 13.87629965" S
	175° 34' 16.82092476" E	36° 40' 11.08732818" S
GREAT MERCURY ISLAND		
Great Mercury Island	175° 46' 11.88605444" E	36° 35' 55.69347704" S
	175° 46' 19.59392836" E	36° 35' 57.56775512" S

	175° 46' 25.74842687" E	36° 36' 01.68669268" S
	175° 46' 28.99934976" E	36° 36' 03.89707132" S
	175° 46' 27.99293624" E	36° 36' 05.31543371" S
	175° 46' 22.80193370" E	36° 36' 02.60776056" S
	175° 46' 19.80690239" E	36° 36' 02.17377095" S
	175° 46' 17.81744701" E	36° 36' 01.63886207" S
	175° 46' 17.66597596" E	36° 36' 00.09248018" S
	175° 46' 12.42715322" E	36° 35' 57.38578943" S
	175° 46' 11.88605444" E	36° 35' 55.69347704" S
WHANGAPOUA HARBOUR		
Whangapoua Harbour	175° 37' 02.92501838" E	36° 43' 22.72147348" S
	175° 37' 03.73244787" E	36° 43' 23.11056263" S
	175° 37' 03.12401534" E	36° 43' 24.68357836" S
	175° 37' 03.17200693" E	36° 43' 26.09684286" S
	175° 37' 03.53897771" E	36° 43' 28.75272541" S
	175° 37' 02.31638857" E	36° 43' 28.89587439" S
	175° 37' 02.11752744" E	36° 43' 27.29218731" S
	175° 36' 59.76696764" E	36° 43' 26.82079785" S
	175° 36' 59.77899141" E	36° 43' 26.82053346" S
	175° 37' 02.92501838" E	36° 43' 22.72147348" S
MATAPAUA BAY		
Matapaua Bay	175° 48' 44.61232582" E	36° 44' 27.78001561" S
	175° 48' 40.64429078" E	36° 44' 20.75714999" S
	175° 48' 46.06777444" E	36° 44' 21.27130162" S
	175° 48' 46.97144261" E	36° 44' 28.06697799" S
	175° 48' 44.61232582" E	36° 44' 27.78001561" S
MERCURY BAY		
Hahei Beach	175° 48' 48.63085228" E	36° 50' 27.36468449" S
	175° 48' 48.63717463" E	36° 50' 27.36965887" S
	175° 48' 48.62513145" E	36° 50' 27.36994615" S
	175° 48' 48.63085228" E	36° 50' 27.36468449" S
	175° 48' 48.63085228" E	36° 50' 27.36468449" S
	175° 48' 46.41583640" E	36° 50' 25.62057279" S
	175° 48' 47.45979590" E	36° 50' 24.51096294" S
	175° 48' 49.81428817" E	36° 50' 26.27626300" S
	175° 48' 48.63085228" E	36° 50' 27.36468449" S
Cooks Beach	175° 44' 36.55760545" E	36° 50' 10.32477297" S
	175° 44' 36.55282246" E	36° 50' 10.34220510" S
	175° 44' 36.55213040" E	36° 50' 10.32284729" S
	175° 44' 36.55760545" E	36° 50' 10.32477297" S
	175° 44' 36.55760545" E	36° 50' 10.32477297" S
	175° 44' 38.04551632" E	36° 50' 04.90256014" S
	175° 45' 13.28418631" E	36° 50' 03.62227117" S
	175° 45' 11.17926328" E	36° 50' 09.44431339" S
	175° 45' 06.85326721" E	36° 50' 11.13315388" S
	175° 44' 54.06378183" E	36° 50' 12.04916317" S

	175° 44' 45.92399648" E	36° 50' 12.23739263" S
	175° 44' 39.23715023" E	36° 50' 11.26825177" S
	175° 44' 36.55760545" E	36° 50' 10.32477297" S
Flaxmill (Maramaratotora) Bay	175° 43' 20.32138393" E	36° 49' 52.45850722" S
	175° 43' 13.97624818" E	36° 49' 49.59095083" S
	175° 43' 25.98538828" E	36° 49' 42.73124409" S
	175° 43' 25.37725326" E	36° 49' 49.20388943" S
	175° 43' 20.32138393" E	36° 49' 52.45850722" S
Wharekaho North	175° 43' 46.26195390" E	36° 47' 33.63563156" S
	175° 43' 50.87489703" E	36° 47' 34.65333576" S
	175° 43' 49.99808992" E	36° 47' 36.41710093" S
	175° 43' 45.24001749" E	36° 47' 35.38334683" S
	175° 43' 46.26195390" E	36° 47' 33.63563156" S
Whitianga Harbour	175° 42' 31.09957343" E	36° 50' 00.21637268" S
	175° 42' 35.35437443" E	36° 49' 57.85264533" S
	175° 42' 35.33029131" E	36° 49' 57.85319407" S
	175° 42' 39.34762122" E	36° 49' 55.59171004" S
	175° 42' 39.25719070" E	36° 49' 59.85595295" S
	175° 42' 36.91822456" E	36° 50' 03.91963898" S
	175° 42' 37.76951268" E	36° 50' 06.18629598" S
	175° 42' 39.49524066" E	36° 50' 05.91443862" S
	175° 42' 42.21054629" E	36° 50' 05.00003441" S
	175° 42' 44.69977075" E	36° 50' 05.87314181" S
	175° 42' 46.48063086" E	36° 50' 08.52539913" S
	175° 42' 46.29056926" E	36° 50' 09.28530650" S
	175° 42' 45.61885185" E	36° 50' 10.05621200" S
	175° 42' 43.31072451" E	36° 50' 11.58129369" S
	175° 42' 41.91058911" E	36° 50' 14.24805495" S
	175° 42' 38.91726532" E	36° 50' 20.94211166" S
	175° 42' 36.84816459" E	36° 50' 23.77910668" S
	175° 42' 31.54182698" E	36° 50' 27.77483526" S
	175° 42' 29.38805213" E	36° 50' 30.26500370" S
	175° 42' 28.60023969" E	36° 50' 32.53029213" S
	175° 42' 29.08326022" E	36° 50' 38.02136148" S
	175° 42' 19.00678438" E	36° 50' 44.83794967" S
	175° 42' 16.10882933" E	36° 50' 47.42249604" S
	175° 42' 13.65759067" E	36° 50' 51.74047106" S
	175° 42' 09.82785163" E	36° 50' 53.88121709" S
	175° 42' 01.42144451" E	36° 51' 00.23318656" S
	175° 41' 56.80928723" E	36° 51' 03.43777608" S
	175° 41' 53.79881388" E	36° 50' 53.23818528" S
	175° 42' 01.24015011" E	36° 50' 47.54763326" S
	175° 42' 09.36898859" E	36° 50' 42.90685830" S
	175° 42' 13.48003147" E	36° 50' 36.43941684" S
	175° 42' 18.15963893" E	36° 50' 31.06328167" S
	175° 42' 24.53030982" E	36° 50' 23.74996397" S

	175° 42' 26.87215740" E	36° 50' 20.44184535" S
	175° 42' 30.87299101" E	36° 50' 14.28673119" S
	175° 42' 32.73200562" E	36° 50' 09.59469599" S
	175° 42' 31.09957343" E	36° 50' 00.21637268" S
TAIRUA HARBOUR		
Tairua Harbour	175° 51' 30.30258247" E	37° 00' 18.56929790" S
	175° 51' 31.68265130" E	37° 00' 20.58951101" S
	175° 51' 27.89386035" E	37° 00' 22.61806883" S
	175° 51' 21.44698824" E	37° 00' 25.91170708" S
	175° 51' 16.59280003" E	37° 00' 29.16691483" S
	175° 51' 13.57704243" E	37° 00' 32.49406648" S
	175° 51' 11.56859415" E	37° 00' 36.92056657" S
	175° 51' 09.80192132" E	37° 00' 40.06265751" S
	175° 51' 08.34076156" E	37° 00' 43.62359141" S
	175° 51' 03.05363030" E	37° 00' 45.64922574" S
	175° 51' 01.73479926" E	37° 00' 47.85064443" S
	175° 50' 59.42554004" E	37° 00' 46.82128995" S
	175° 51' 04.69893679" E	37° 00' 35.38101804" S
	175° 51' 05.17873309" E	37° 00' 35.29199232" S
	175° 51' 06.76582227" E	37° 00' 35.09884663" S
	175° 51' 08.00104963" E	37° 00' 33.24812947" S
	175° 51' 07.54252615" E	37° 00' 31.32191249" S
	175° 51' 12.35100592" E	37° 00' 25.54948667" S
	175° 51' 14.57177174" E	37° 00' 24.21746647" S
	175° 51' 21.40482420" E	37° 00' 20.91463208" S
	175° 51' 27.88638672" E	37° 00' 18.55003716" S
	175° 51' 30.30258247" E	37° 00' 18.56929790" S
Paku	175° 51' 42.12149927" E	37° 00' 12.43763749" S
	175° 51' 45.56245141" E	37° 00' 12.73235536" S
	175° 51' 45.56974717" E	37° 00' 14.21416815" S
	175° 51' 42.06554249" E	37° 00' 13.84348714" S
	175° 51' 42.12149927" E	37° 00' 12.43763749" S
WHANGAMATA HARBOUR		
Whangamata Harbour	175° 52' 01.35421535" E	37° 11' 13.79552296" S
	175° 52' 08.33869357" E	37° 11' 12.81268988" S
	175° 52' 09.12297133" E	37° 11' 19.45762916" S
	175° 52' 09.20210572" E	37° 11' 22.82642507" S
	175° 52' 10.35739343" E	37° 11' 29.03618195" S
	175° 52' 12.09188214" E	37° 11' 31.35750809" S
	175° 52' 15.19728118" E	37° 11' 32.79321401" S
	175° 52' 19.05180834" E	37° 11' 29.71644216" S
	175° 52' 22.45780164" E	37° 11' 31.41601096" S
	175° 52' 27.21800846" E	37° 11' 35.62039108" S
	175° 52' 30.48346465" E	37° 11' 38.71808124" S
	175° 52' 32.23288121" E	37° 11' 41.42639461" S
	175° 52' 35.08209762" E	37° 11' 45.03782612" S

	175° 52' 37.65123262" E	37° 11' 47.64870726" S
	175° 52' 41.75381229" E	37° 11' 53.65110986" S
	175° 52' 46.37634403" E	37° 11' 59.31149718" S
	175° 52' 47.87915364" E	37° 11' 58.07387985" S
	175° 52' 48.51207353" E	37° 11' 54.33908277" S
	175° 52' 50.62826682" E	37° 11' 56.49597804" S
	175° 52' 51.34986768" E	37° 11' 57.64072675" S
	175° 52' 50.87540090" E	37° 12' 01.72036208" S
	175° 52' 50.06808460" E	37° 12' 05.96307374" S
	175° 52' 49.39945883" E	37° 12' 06.21180731" S
	175° 52' 48.08815316" E	37° 12' 03.57039988" S
	175° 52' 42.42449807" E	37° 11' 58.55525386" S
	175° 52' 41.13418710" E	37° 11' 59.01280991" S
	175° 52' 37.02958299" E	37° 11' 55.50942509" S
	175° 52' 33.77107653" E	37° 11' 51.32679789" S
	175° 52' 30.37848465" E	37° 11' 46.79870703" S
	175° 52' 27.91198828" E	37° 11' 43.06171988" S
	175° 52' 26.98802071" E	37° 11' 39.13228877" S
	175° 52' 23.73580748" E	37° 11' 36.38294281" S
	175° 52' 22.00857896" E	37° 11' 35.53375748" S
	175° 52' 17.73751774" E	37° 11' 35.28869262" S
	175° 52' 15.65916148" E	37° 11' 34.75794900" S
	175° 52' 11.73853270" E	37° 11' 33.53572844" S
	175° 52' 08.68447238" E	37° 11' 30.89769252" S
	175° 52' 05.01619401" E	37° 11' 26.10485603" S
	175° 52' 02.98275711" E	37° 11' 22.27973053" S
	175° 52' 01.75717658" E	37° 11' 19.32613940" S
	175° 52' 01.75790745" E	37° 11' 19.34549265" S
	175° 52' 01.35421535" E	37° 11' 13.79552296" S

WEST COAST MOORING AREAS

Mooring Area	longitude	latitude
KAWHIA HARBOUR		
Kawhia Harbour - North of Wharf	174° 49' 29.06714447" E	38° 04' 00.64938423" S
	174° 49' 26.59339762" E	38° 03' 57.40538475" S
	174° 49' 30.96582006" E	38° 03' 54.12013137" S
	174° 49' 41.64967094" E	38° 03' 51.63515562" S
	174° 49' 47.20178114" E	38° 03' 53.52032987" S
	174° 49' 39.55788416" E	38° 03' 58.68549325" S
	174° 49' 29.06714447" E	38° 04' 00.64938423" S
Kawhia Harbour - Opposite Wharf	174° 49' 22.25796169" E	38° 04' 07.41222735" S
	174° 49' 22.44259351" E	38° 04' 04.64064781" S
	174° 49' 48.52948610" E	38° 03' 59.21308933" S
	174° 49' 49.37236276" E	38° 04' 02.83289646" S
	174° 49' 22.25796169" E	38° 04' 07.41222735" S
Kawhia Harbour - South of Wharf	174° 49' 20.72506679" E	38° 03' 59.57916991" S
	174° 49' 22.08495263" E	38° 04' 00.51764133" S
	174° 49' 03.65316584" E	38° 04' 20.84514864" S
	174° 48' 59.64058658" E	38° 04' 18.86225565" S
	174° 49' 10.13269099" E	38° 04' 07.32041655" S
	174° 49' 20.72506679" E	38° 03' 59.57916991" S
Kawhia Harbour - Te Maika	174° 46' 30.39061426" E	38° 05' 50.09604455" S
	174° 46' 24.05426512" E	38° 05' 47.11619008" S
	174° 46' 22.94850188" E	38° 05' 42.07501436" S
	174° 46' 28.58666386" E	38° 05' 38.25709133" S
	174° 46' 32.31732160" E	38° 05' 40.49806891" S
	174° 46' 34.81981166" E	38° 05' 42.94965171" S
	174° 46' 30.39061426" E	38° 05' 50.09604455" S
Kawhia Harbour – Te Waitere	174° 49' 31.33576606" E	38° 08' 13.27636449" S
	174° 49' 27.05018124" E	38° 08' 02.97875189" S
	174° 49' 32.91087675" E	38° 08' 02.07601686" S
	174° 49' 35.86241163" E	38° 08' 12.61925082" S
	174° 49' 31.33576606" E	38° 08' 13.27636449" S
WHAINGAROA (RAGLAN) HARBOUR		
Lorenzen Bay	174° 53' 15.59104015" E	37° 47' 58.05433408" S
	174° 53' 19.55224189" E	37° 47' 58.28143116" S
	174° 53' 20.47605423" E	37° 48' 02.91634415" S
	174° 53' 18.81642465" E	37° 48' 04.86097303" S
	174° 53' 15.87059767" E	37° 48' 01.36278441" S
	174° 53' 15.59104015" E	37° 47' 58.05433408" S
Raglan Harbour	174° 52' 50.51290568" E	37° 47' 40.98269068" S
	174° 52' 56.31495054" E	37° 47' 32.94669726" S
	174° 53' 16.07075884" E	37° 47' 41.77497913" S
	174° 53' 10.37957003" E	37° 47' 50.31318030" S
	174° 52' 50.51290568" E	37° 47' 40.98269068" S

PROHIBITED MOORING AREAS

[under development]

Schedule 3 – Seascapes – natural features and landscapes | Āpiti 3 – Ngā tirohanga takutai – ngā tirohanga whenua

[To be developed]

Schedule 3A – Significant Geological Features | Ngā āhuatanga motuhake a te taiao

[To be developed]

Schedule 4 – Natural Character | Āpiti 4 – Āhua tūturu

1	**Chenier Plains and Miranda Wetlands**	**Abiotic**	• The shell barrier beach at Miranda is the largest in New Zealand and is the only one of its type that is actively aggrading • Chenier Plains: Internationally significant landform at Miranda
		Biotic	• The Firth of Thames contains a Ramsar site of international significance to migratory wading birds, including the rare New Zealand Dotterel • Associated mangroves add to biotic sequences from land to sea
		Experiential	• Largely remote unmodified shores amplifies perceived naturalness • Tidal changes promote ephemeral activity • Presence of birds amplifies perceived level of naturalness
2	Motukawao Island Group	**Abiotic**	• Islands are surrounded by unmodified rocky shelves and open waters • Prominent and unmodified volcanic island group
		Biotic	• Area of very high conservation value for demersal fish occur around Mouoruhi Island • Unmodified vegetation sequences between islands and sea floor
		Experiential	• A sense of isolation and remoteness • High levels of perceived naturalness due to lack of modification
3	Coastline between Fletcher Bay and Kennedy Bay	**Abiotic**	• Limited modification to wild and rugged coastline; • Dramatic cliffs and exposed rocky shores amplify areas unique geology
		Biotic	• Entire coastal near shore indented coastal waters hold an array of high biotic habitats with limited modification • High reef fish richness between Port Jackson and Tuateawa • Steep valleys and spurs contain a mixture of unmodified native shrub land and forest. • Extensive areas under formal protection in Conservation Areas, QEII covenants. The Moehau ecological area in particular, supports an almost complete altitudinal sequence of plant and animal communities from near sea level to sub-alpine conditions. It is home to a number of rare or endangered endemic species (e.g. land snails, Archey's frog).
		Experiential	• Unmodified coastal edge forms majority of coastline, amplifying perceived naturalness; • Wild and remote feel within more open waters
4	Coastline, coastal waters and islands off Cathedral Cove	**Abiotic**	• Spectacular coastal arch, isolated stack (Te Horo Rock) and impressive cliffs of white ignimbrite at Cathedral Cove cumulatively read as an extremely well defined set of landforms of scientific and educational value that are unmodified;

		Biotic	• Te Whanganui-A-Hei (Cathedral Cove) Marine Reserve contains a variety of habitats including hard rock, soft sediment, caves and arches with high levels of ecological naturalness • Ribbon of indigenous bush skirts the steep coastal fringe
		Experiential	• Cumulatively, the off shore islands hold high degrees of perceived naturalness due to their modified form; • High experiential values due to the bush lined white sands and recognisable landforms of Te Horo Rock and Cathedral Cove • Visually dramatic eroded coastal landforms that are etched into the psyche of New Zealanders and visitors
5	Remote coastline and coastal waters off Taupuaetahi	**Abiotic**	• Exposed rocky cliffs, shores and beaches
		Biotic	• Comprised mainly of Coromandel State Forest Park (notably southern sections) and numerous areas of QEII land • Strong unmodified sequential link between land and sea
		Experiential	• Access is difficult to gain which amplifies perceived naturalness • Very high degree of experiential values due to limited modification and extent of indigenous bush cover • Wildness and remote experiential values along the rocky and indigenous bush-clad coastline.
6	Aldermen Islands and coastal waters	**Abiotic**	• Forms part of a larger submarine platform that has been eroded almost entirely by wave action. • Steep rhyolite features provide a range of spectacular rocky coastal landforms such as spires, needles and vertical bluffs that extend through the archipelago
		Biotic	• A nature reserve/wildlife sanctuary comprising five main islands with high reef fish • Contains threatened and endangered species including tutatara, giant centipedes; lizards (geckos and skinks) and tusked weta and giant weka. These islands also support large populations of seabirds, notably petrels, storm petrels and shearwaters. • High diversity and richness of demersal reef fish. • Strong unmodified sequential link between land and sea
		Experiential	• Very high remote values evident, including darkness of the sky
7	Mercury Islands, Cuvier Island and associated coastal waters	**Abiotic**	• Exposed and rocky shorelines are devoid of modification; • Cuvier Island tourmalinised rocks represents a good example of exposed large black crystals of tourmaline evident from the shoreline. • Spectacular exposed geology and coastal landforms exemplify coastal processes including the Korapuki Sea Arch; the Stanley Island basalt vents and cone; and Red Mercury Island basalt.
		Biotic	• Six of the Mercury Islands (excluding Great Mercury Island) and Cuvier Island are nature reserves. • High species of reef fish and intact habitats around islands • These Islands contain threatened and endangered species including tutatara, giant centipedes; lizards (geckos and skinks) and tusked weta and giant weka. These islands also support large populations of seabirds, notably petrels, storm petrels and shearwaters.

			• Strong unmodified sequential link between land and sea
		Experiential	• High perceived naturalness values due to limited modification
8	Cuvier Island and associated coastal waters	**Abiotic**	• Exposed and rocky shorelines are devoid of modification; • Cuvier Island tourmalinised rocks represents a good example of exposed large black crystals of tourmaline evident from the shoreline.
		Biotic	• Cuvier Island is a nature reserve. • High species of reef fish and intact habitats around the island. • Contain threatened and endangered species including tutatara, giant centipedes; lizards (geckos and skinks) and tusked weta and giant weka. These island also support large populations of seabirds, notably petrels, storm petrels and shearwaters. • Strong unmodified sequential link between land and sea • Regenerating native bush cover.
		Experiential	• High perceived naturalness values due to limited modification • Strong sense of remoteness due to distance from mainland. • Modificiation associated to DOC cabins and historical light house.
9	Coastal waters & margins of Aotea Harbour	**Abiotic**	• Dramatic and highly dynamic large active dune system at the harbour mouth. Considered a geopreservation site the abiotic processes are an excellent example of the unmodified coastal processes of the west coast. • The shallow harbour and its intertidal zone remain largely unmodified except for the margins of the residential settlement. The fluvial processes remain largely unmodified excluding some culverts at the southern edges of the harbour where vehicle access is provided for. The remainder of the harbour retains the natural estuarine and wetland features which contribute to the movement of water into and out of the harbour. • Inner harbour islands are remnants of the harbour margins
		Biotic	• Some 930ha of regenerating forest and indigenous scrubland boarders the harbour, with seven ecological sites registered by Waikato Regional Council. • Potahi Point sand dunes provides an excellent example of native vegetation sequencing from dune to coastal shrubland to esturaine vegetation. This is a key ecological site. • Rauiri Head dune scrubland is also a registered ecological site. • Large areas of the harbour margin are heavily vegetated with native bush cover transitioning to estuarine vegetation and wetlands upstream. The natural patterns and their connectedness highlight the natural landform and microclimate present in each area of the harbour.
		Experiential	• High perceived naturalness values due to limited modification. • High experiential values associated with the interpretation of the dominant abiotic and biotic processes occurring within the harbour and on its margins. The experience of the 'entire dune process' from coast to inner harbour is memorable and recognised as completely natural and unmodified. • The lack of access and inturn remoteness is apparent in the mid to northern parts of the area.

			• The lack of human modification within the identified area is a significant part of the experience of the naturalness of the area.
10	Karewa Island / Gannet Island	**Abiotic**	• Located 19 kilometres off the coast the island is 2ha in size rising some 15m above seal level from a 65m base. The island is an eroded tuff ring that erupted about half a millon years ago. • The conditions are harsh with no permanent fresh water. • The low lying nature of the island means that in big swells the island can be entirely washed over. • Guano is present and was mined in the late 1800's for a short period of time. • Dynamic and exposed island expressive of the natural abiotic processes which formed it and continue to erode it.
		Biotic	• A wildlife sanctuary and New Zealand's largest breeding colony for Australasian gannet birds (Morris serrator / takapu), holding about 8000 breeding pairs. • It is a haul out for NZ Fur Seal. • Sealife is abundant and is popular destination for diving and • Extreme isolation and exposure results in a absence of vascular plants and flora. • Vegetation is limited to a small area (3m2 on the summit cliffs) comprising Prasiola, Xanthoria, Tortula and Xanthoparmelia, primarily lichen, moss and green alga.
		Experiential	• High perceived naturalness values due to extremely minimal modification • High sense of remoteness and experience of the daily natural processes from abiotic and biotic factors.
11	Coastal Waters and Margins of Kawhia Harbour	**Abiotic**	• The shallow harbour and its intertidal zone remain largely unmodified except for the margins of the residential settlement. The fluvial processes remain largely unmodified excluding some culverts at the southern edges of the harbour where road and vehicle access is provided for. The remainder of the harbour retains the natural estuarine and wetland features which contribute to the movement of water into and out of the harbour. • The heavily vegetation southern extent of the harbour demonstrates impressive sequencing of native vegetation through to estuarine vegetation.
		Biotic	• Known for containing sites of national importance for wintering indigenous and international migratory shorebirds. • The harbour is identified as being an Area of Significant Conservation Value by Waikato Regional Council.
		Experiential	• High perceived naturalness values due to limited modification on the southern extents of the harbour margin and the mid to southern portions of the harbour body itself. • High experiential values associated with the interpretation of the dominant abiotic and biotic processes occurring within the harbour and on its margins. • The lack of access and inturn remoteness is apparent in the southern areas of the harbour. The lack of human modification within the identified area is a significant part of the experience of the naturalness of the area.

Schedule 5 – Historic Heritage | Āpiti 5 – Taonga onamata

The following sites have been identified through analysis of the New Zealand Heritage List, the NZ Archaeological Association Database and the Australian National Shipwreck Database, along with three additional sites not on these lists - Raglan Wharf, the shipwreck Sarah Berry, and the Mokau Bridge counterweight. Note that the Plan only addresses sites located entirely or partially in the CMA. Some are potentially in the CMA as determined by their site descriptions.

The list excludes sites only recorded as midden / artefact sites as these are considered to be too numerous to include. Not all shipwrecks on the schedule have a confirmed location that would allow mapping. No sites have been verified by individual on site investigation, so their current condition and precise location cannot be confirmed. The listings have been divided into those that are hard structures or readily identifiable and discrete (Historic Structures), and those that are shipwrecks, or larger more poorly defined sites.

Table 1: Heritage Structures

ID #	Structure Type	Description	Features
155	Bridge	1920s bridge in Thames. Much of the structure's historical significance is derived from its design which made provision for the considerable river traffic which had begun in earnest in the 1880s and upon which the region initially depended to facilitate development.	Bridge structure
94	Cave/ rock shelter	Rock Shelters	Three rock shelters at back of 2m raised beach. Midden, bone, and obsidian observed in 1983.
154	Cave/ rock shelter	Cave with evidence of pre-contact occupation. Original entrance appears closed off with the current opening the collapsed seaward wall of the cave.	Artefacts, fireplaces, kokowai, and midden. Single storm surge or heavy king tide could wash the cave out and destroy the archaeological sites.
148	Cupboard	Cool store cut into rock face. Within the hole, horizontal lengths of no8 wire have had their ends embedded into the walls to from racks/shelves.	South-facing cut of 39 x 46 x 80 cm, immediately opposite (NE) of Ngatokakairiri Island.
53	Fishing	Fish Trap	Long crescent shaped mound of large boulders, submerged at high tide. Approximately 45m long and up to 3m high.
62	Fishing	Fish Trap	Semi-circular wall of stones located at the tidal zone of the estuary (Firth of Thames) for fish trap.
103	Fishing	Flounder Trap	Semi-circular trap of stones 71 yards long and 30 yards across. Green and grey obsidian, midden and ovenstones found nearby
104	Fishing	Fish Trap	Fish trap located below high tide, appears to be made from smallboulders but no further details are clear from the records.

117	Fishing	Fish Trap	11 x 6 metre circle of stones forming a pool on the volcanic shoreline for a fish trap.
146	Fishing	C-shaped line of calcareous sandstone and/or limestone rocks.	"C"-shape line of rocks about 25m from end to end and 15m across to form a fish trap.
149	Fishing	Stone alignment, stone heap/ mound	Stone ridges, heaps and alignments on mudflat.
7	Flax milling	Flaxmill / Tramway, Presumed to be for transportation of flax from valley to beach.	Tramway remains on the wavecut rock bench. Slots cut into rock to accommodate sleepers for a NZ narrow gauge track.
109	Jetty	Jetty	Series of rough 12-15cm square footings cut into soft rocky platform to received jetty piles which have decayed.
31	Landing	Stone arrangement, stands on the mud flats on the left bank of the Opotoru estuary, 1.5 km up the channel from the Opotoru bridge. It is immediately south of a small embayment created by the discharge of a short unnamed stream into the estuary.	Linear arrangement of stones comprises 17-20 m of rounded river cobbles arranged in a line projecting from the shoreline out towards the channel. The arrangement is approximately 2 m wide at its widest point.
32	Military (non-Maori)	World War Two Pillbox	An emplacement for a machine gun or antitank gun: ca. 3x4m, ca. 2.5m high, made of ca. 25cm thick concrete, double roof with two channels passing through.
72	Oyster Farm Rows	Oyster Farm rows	Post WWII experimental Oyster Farm
73	Oyster Farm Rows	Oyster Farm rows	Post WWII experimental Oyster Farm
77	Oyster Farm Rows	Oyster Farm rows	Post WWII experimental Oyster Farm
128	Oyster Farm Rows	Oyster Farm rows	Post WWII experimental Oyster Farm
130	Oyster Farm Rows	Oyster Farm rows	Post WWII experimental Oyster Farm
135	Oyster Farm Rows	Oyster Farm rows	Post WWII experimental Oyster Farm
131	Retaining Wall	Dry-stone retaining wall constructed out of limestone face stones and quarried basalt backing. Possible wharf/quay/fishtrap. - function unclear.	Retaining wall constructed of stone in the form of two right-angle triangles. Function unknown.
24	Road	Road - Low-tide road across mudflats.	200m long and 3-4m wide. Built up of rocks with kerbs made of larger stone
25	Road	Causeway needed to cross the muddy estuary of the Kaiariki stream.	The causeway is 100m long and 4m wide. The carriageway is 3m wide.
26	Road	Approximately 3m wide roadway cut across the rougher parts of the coastal rock bench.	Rock cutting for Aotea Beach Road, below high tide.
28	Road	Road low tide	Fascined road incorporating two causeways, paved with rocks ca. 10cm diameter.
76	Stone Walls	Stone Walls	Stone wall at North Head, Te Kouma Harbour. 80cm high enclosing a flat area of shingle bank c.20m across at the base of headland pa S11/59.

70	Timber milling	Timber boom and stone wall.	Two wooden posts eroding at base and a low stone wall on estuary side of the boom (not clear if in CMA)
127	Timber milling	Timber Boom	Remains of link chain in rocks at north end of Teeney Bay from logging boom.
136	Timber milling	Stubs of timber piles (2) with some attached timber pieces and iron-work. Probably the remains of piles used to prevent water-driven kauri logs washing out to sea.	Timber structure (now consisting of two posts nearly completely buried by sand) and a narrow tunnel through the rock near the stream mouth, on the true right bank. One of these posts is directly underneath the wooden steps leading down to the stream from
132	Tramway	Tramway on the west bank of the Tangtiaro River Mouth.	Visible in the foreshore 35m from the beach. Eight wooden sleepers lying in a NW-SE direction visible in the sand and stones.
158	Wahi Tapu	The extent of registration encompasses two groves of pohutukawa trees known as Te Papa o Karewa and Tangi te Korowhiti and the land (and part of the foreshore) described as Blk X Kawhia North SD (NZ Gazette 1913, p.320) South Auckland Land District.	Area of Wahi Tapu that includes a tunnel system and the landing site of the Tainui waka (the masonry groyne) . The area is approximately 245 metres long, 55 metres wide and 1.3 ha.
45	Wharf	Wharf. 8 standing posts on riverbank.	Wharf/ jetty, eight standing posts with and iron spike driven into one example.
46	Wharf	Wharf. Two rows of posts parallel to west bank of Waihou River.	Wharf/ jetty consisting of two parallel rows of milled timber/upright posts running along the edge of the older river bank.
47	Wharf	Wharf originally constructed 1872 as part of goldfields transportation system. In the 1920s, a scheme was devised to convert the old Burke St wharf into a deep water harbour but this was abandoned.	Concrete piles from the 1920s scheme and breakwater walls that were partially complete. Stumps of wooden piles from the original wharf can also be seen at low tide.
123	Wharf	Built in the later 1910s/1920s Raglan Wharf was one of the first examples built in New Zealand of reinforced concrete	Wharf at the end of Wallis Street in Raglan
147	Wharf	Stone Wharf	Wharf/breakwater made from massive blocks of Coromandel granite.
156	Wharf	Shortland Street, Wharf Jellicoe crescent	
157	Wharf	Stone wharf, constructed 1837.	Wharf/ jetty
185	Concrete counterweight	Discarded 17 tonne bridge weight east of the northern end of the Mokau bridge	Mokau lifting bridge weight
14	Ballast	Ballast Heaps	Four heaps of ballast rock spread along the edge of the channel over a distance of 100m. Heaps are 3-6m diameter, and rise to 0,5m above the surrounding mud.

15	Ballast	Ballast pile, similar to R15/513.	Patch of rocks at edge of channel exposed only at unusually low tides. About 4m across where visible but more may be buried beneath sand. Most rocks of soft iron-rich sandstone. Some of same hard vesicular grey volcanic rock as ballast pile at R15/513.
16	Ballast	Ballast Pile	Ballast pile on the sand bar that runs between Totara point and Te Maika. Exposed at unusually low tides and 4m across where visible. Rocks range in size with most examples appearing to have been freshly quarried volcanic rock.
83	Shipyard	Shipyard	Pit where timber for boat building yard was sawn (not clear if in CMA).

Table 2: Heritage Sites

ID #	Structure Type	Description	Features
19	Boat Channel	According to the account of an early settler this is the site of a boat channel connecting Oparau channel to the Awaroa channel, dug by pre-contact Maori.	Possible man-made channel with a depth of over 1 metre at low-tide. Further zigzag boat channel may also be present closer in to the peninsula.
68	Burial/ cemetery	Burial	Burial. Under large overhanging rock on southern shore of Manaia Harbour (not known if in CMA).
82	Burial/ cemetery	Urupa/ Midden	Midden with evidence for human remains. Eroding west edge of an urupa.
85	Burial/ cemetery	Midden/ Burial	Extending along most of the beach frontage of Little passage.
97	Burial/ cemetery	Dune Burial	Located in the foredunes
98	Burial/ cemetery	Archaic Burial	Burial in consolidated dune sand a few meters above the beach and eroding by wind actions (not clear if in CMA)
101	Burial/ cemetery	Burials	Burial. Between Wharf Rd, the 2 streams, and the main Colville Rd north. Small swampy area at the edge of Colville Bay. Human bones have been located in the estuary over the years.
107	Burial/ cemetery	Crouched Burial	The grave of a young woman was discovered and excavated. This was a simple hole in the boulder beach into which the trussed skeleton had been inserted in the typical upright posture. The head faced due south. Could signify further remains are present.
108	Burial/ cemetery	Burial, pit	This site has been excavated (1955). Recovered was the burial of a women in an upright position. Could signify further remains are present.
110	Burial/ cemetery	Burial, recorded in 1972.	Human remains noted eroding and being recovered.
124	Engravings	Rock engravings on flat, low rocks, exposed by tidal scour and meandering of Waimai Stream.	Petroglyph- Maori names/words, most letters 20cm tall, 5mm deep; also marks left by horse shoes.
111	Landing	Canoe Beaching	Canoe landing on artificial terrace with anchor stone
125	Landing	Stone Heaps	Stone heap/ mound on the beach west of pa site S11/926. Possibly a canoe landing with channel.
126	Midden/Oven	Archaic midden and artefacts (including fishing hooks, an imitation whale-tooth pendant and adze making debris and roughouts).	Visible in the inter-tidal zone and on land between Beach, Bond and Port Roads. Artefact - stone flakes, fishing gear, obsidian, adze, and ornaments, middens and ovens.
8	Occupation (see records for 45 and 81	Midden, hangi and koiwi	In-situ hangi, midden, and 3 burial on the seaward crest of the major sand dune.

	- this is a collection of sites)		
23	Pa	Islet Pa	Steps leading to coastline on SW corner are in the CMA
133	Pa	Pa, as part of the description for this site a waka is recorded in the mudflats.	Local knowledge identified c.2 feet of a canoe visible in the bank of a small spring just above the mudflats at Kaiwaka, marked by a rock sticking out of the mudflats. Not seen from the c.1960s onwards.
134	Pa	Pa site/settlement. Historic midden.	Historic midden identified on eastern foreshore, and bricks extending out c.20m possibly identifying Watts trading store (1872).
137	Pa	Headland pa and associated working floor.	Associated working floor on the east side of the pa in a small mud-flat bay, being eroded by the sea. Greenstone pendant found here.
144	Pa	Headland pa defended by double ditch and bank, with transverse and lateral terraces and a possible pit. Cave below at northern end of small beach, with petroglyphs and modern graffiti.	Petroglyphs in cave below northern end of small beach.
34	Quarry	Limestone Workings	Limestone slabs from a small quarrying operation c.1880s. On a rock platform on the shoreline exposed at low tide, Narrows Bay. 60 x 30 m
35	Quarry	Small exposure of lahar deposit which contains lumps of tough, fine-grained basalt.	Basalt quarry and stone flakes found on west side of inlet. For 20-30m along high-tide mark there is eroded basalt from the lahar, & basalt flakes from pre-European Maori use for stone tool making.
152	Quarry	Quarry used to create basalt tools located along the base and lower part of Motutu Point cliff face.	Motutu Point is composed of basalt outcrops with examples of where flakes had been removed at high tide level
153	Rockshelter and Midden/Oven	Headland with two rockshelters with associated midden.	Rock shelter with livable floor in the front of which is a layer of solid midden. A second rock shelter with midden is identified on the seaward side of a stack, the latter located at the end of the point.
84	Shipyard	Historic shipyard. Possibly established originally by William Webster, trader, whose trading post is S11/888 in Aropawa Bay on same island. Research Essay 'Mosen, Jeffrey, 1992, William Webster Wepiha Trader and Land Speculator, MA Anthropology, Universit	Raised rectangular bank at the eastern end of Tawhiti Bay and immediately above mean high water mark.
150	Shipyard	Shipyard	Possible boat yard. Four piles located in the bay.

139	Source Site	Scatter of yellow-brown chert over an area 30m across. Cores and flakes recovered, chert buried in swamp deposits behind beach. 120m to SW are ovenstones with midden at back of beach.	Chert cores and flakes found along the beach
151	Tattooed Rocks	Petroglyphs: 'tattooed' basalt rocks of local origin, apparently drawn on with ship tar, show Maori facial tattoo patterns and initials FC and TA.	Petroglyph are near the high tide mark and are frequently buffeted by high seas.
56	Timber milling	Timber milling remains.	Timber off-cuts 50cm below surface extending onto mudflats over a length of +/-50m. Timber appears to be off-cuts of sawn kauri. Sawdust and off-cuts from the outside of logs were dumped into the harbour and used in reclamation so timber could be stored o
141	Timber milling	Sawmill and associated features including a tramway and ballast quay. NZ Timber Company constructed a tramway along the harbour foreshore to bring timber from Opitonui to a wharf adjacent to the Opera Sawmill. Booms were in place along the western shore o	Slipway or tramway on the beach, only one metal rail remains. A heap of stone ballast near to the low tide mark c.200m to the east of concrete sheep dips. Breakwater or quay at the tip of triangular shaped sandspit, rectangular, extends from below beach
86	Tramway	Tramway	Causeway extends into mudflat, 35m long and 0.6m high mase of clay and manuka fascines. A channel is cut through the mangroves from the end of the causeway. Wooden piles beyond the tidal channel which are the remains of a boom or wharf.
27	Waka	Waka hull ca. 12m long and 0.8m wide, originally recorded as lying in the intertidal zone on the edge of Aotea Harbour. A later visit records that the gully appears to now be above high tide level due to silting.	Seen in 1988 but not found on revisit in Feb 2004. Likely to have been partly buried in silt and trampled by cattle after scrub cleared. The waka could not be observed and considered mostly destroyed.
96	Whaling Station	Whaling Station	Three large "try-pots"; one halfway along beach, one under water in the bay and one complete in Whitianga.
138	Whaling Station	Stated to have been a Whaling Station in early 19th century and visible evidence lasted into the early decades of the 20th century, reported by hearsay, but no visible evidence by 1970s.	No visible evidence recorded in 1970s.
142	Working area	Specialised workshop for grinding and polishing stone adzes. 1979: Seven boulders of hard sandstone have up to 19 scalloped groves and cavities each. By 1997 only two boulders not covered by sand.	The site is in rocky bed at mouth of Marumaruaitu Stream, directly beneath pa R15/58 and just below the high water mark.
145	Working area	A slab of rock about 1x1x0.5m lying on the beach appears to have been used for sharpening adzes.	The rock is lying on the beach at the tip of the headland.

69	Working area/flaking floor	Working area of basalt flakes and some obsidian with residents recalling collection of adze roughouts	Working area/ flaking floor exposed in intertidal zone.
81	Working area/flaking floor	Abundant large basalt flakes and obsidian flakes	Flakes and midden found along bank behind beach (not known if in CMA)
99	Working area/flaking floor	A formerly extensive occupation floor as suggested by the widespread scatter of basalt flakes, occasional rough-out and hangi stone.	Flakes and adze rough-outs that extend for two thirds of the beach length.
113	Working area/flaking floor	Area of flakes, roughouts, hammer stones and obsidian chips scattered among beach boulders	Working area/ flaking floor extends for some distance on either side of road on both sides of Ongohi Stream mouth (not known if in CMA)
129	Working area/flaking floor	Numerous flakes of Tahanga Basalt eroding out of dark soil exposed in boat access cutting.	Basalt flaking activity found along south bank of wigmore stream.
140	Working area/flaking floor	Working area with broken/reject adze blanks, waste flakes, finished adzes, drillpoints, and midden	Flake, adze pre-forms found on shoreward facing dune slope about 50 metres back from high water mark, seen from shoreline as a scatter of bleached shell and stone material covering about 20 x 25 metres (not known if in CMA as dune system is dynamic).

Table 3: Shipwrecks

		Name of Ship	Type of Vessel	Location
1	148	Douglas	Screw steamer. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 92.19, year wrecked: 1900	Mokau River, north spit
2	140	Waitara	Type of vessel: Single screw steamer Sailing rig type: Fore & aft Schooner. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 36.19, year wrecked: 1893	Mokau River bar
3	180	Kapui	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Ketch. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 59.18, year wrecked: 1934	Mokau, 300 yards to the north of the river mouth
4	158	Enterprise No.2	Fishing vessel year wrecked: 1882	Mokau bar
5	156	Moana	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Schooner. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 120.7, year wrecked: 1905	Mokau, one mile north of the heads
6	126	Roseanne	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Cutter, year wrecked: 1899	Awakino River entrance
9	163	Kia Ora	Screw steamer,. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 299.9, year wrecked: 1907	Piritoki Reef, off Tirua Point
10	185	Tyrone	Fishing vessel, year wrecked: 1977	5 miles south of Marokopa
11	143	Albatross	Type of vessel: Scow Sailing rig type: Ketch. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 50.0, year wrecked: 1916	Marakopa River bar
12	181	Campbell	Fishing vessel, year wrecked: 1936	Kawhia, Albatross Point
13	132	Hannah	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Schooner. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 60.0, year wrecked: 1840	Kawhia, Te Waitere

17	162	Harihari	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Cutter, year wrecked: 1892	Kawhia south head
18	149	Thistle	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Cutter. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 17.39, year wrecked: 1863	Kawhia bar
20	144	Royalist	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Schooner. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 86.0, year wrecked: 1854	Kawhia, northern spit
21	157	Richmond	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Schooner. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 22.0, year wrecked: 1845	Kawhia bar
22	116	Florence	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Ketch, year wrecked: 1871	Te Puru Point, Coromandel
29	121	Kaiuma	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Schooner. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 39.19, year wrecked: 1878	Ruapuke Beach, between Matawha Rocks and Toreparu Stream
30	2	Sarah Berry	12 tonne cutter sunk off the coast of Raglan in 1846, Unclear of this vessel was salvaged	Near site R14/50
33	142	Falcon	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Schooner. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 98.0, year wrecked: 1915	Raglan harbour, north head
36	134	Nymph	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Schooner. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 22.0, year wrecked: 1842	Raglan, north of Mussel Rocks
37	154	Echo	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Schooner. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 27.0, year wrecked: 1877	Raglan, north of Mussel Rocks
38	78		Shipwreck - Discrete items from a ship are scattered over 70m, previously buried in sand. Includes wooden windlass, 2 iron hanging knees, 4 iron objects and parts of bilge pump.	Waikorea Beach
39	145	Pride of the Isles	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Schooner. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 29.0, year wrecked: 1860	Takau 12 miles north of Raglan
40	155	Isobella Anderson	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Schooner. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 85.46, year wrecked: 1904	Rangikahu Beach, north of Raglan
41	139	Agnes	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Cutter. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 23.09, Year wrecked: 1874.	Pukerewa, Waikato coast, mid-way between Raglan and Waikato River
42	151	Arthur McKenzie	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Brig. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 229.0, year wrecked: 1864	Waikato River bar
43	137	Industry	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Schooner. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 23.72, year wrecked: 1871	Waikato River bar
44	150	Waverley	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Schooner. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 91.0, year wrecked: 1864	Waikato River bar

48	123	Lizzie	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Cutter. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 10.0, year wrecked: 1857	Firth of Thames, Wapu Bay
49	146	Glitter	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Cutter, year wrecked: 1868	Tararu Point, near Thames
50	164	Surprise	Type of vessel: Scow Sailing rig type: Schooner. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 88.18, year wrecked: 1907	1 mile from the northern end of Ohui Beach
51	177	Manaia	Type of vessel: Screw steamer Sailing rig type: Fore & aft Schooner. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 1159.0, year wrecked: 1926	Slipper Island, southern end of the Slipper Island rocks
52	175	Te Teko	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Schooner. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 108.5, year wrecked: 1920	Slipper Island, on reef at SE end
54	124	Mary Jane	Sailing Vessel, year wrecked: 1858	Sipper Island
55	111	Brunette	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Cutter. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 18.24, year wrecked: 1875	Tairua harbour
57	113	Eclair	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Cutter. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 17.0, year wrecked: 1871	Tairua, inside bar
58	114	Elizabeth & Mary	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Schooner. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 90.0, year wrecked: 1831	Waikato bar
59	174	Wairoa	Type of vessel: Screw steamer Sailing rig type: Schooner. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 99.98, year wrecked: 1919	Tairua
60	118	Glance	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Cutter. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 19.0, year wrecked: 1877	Shoe Island
61	131	Glatton	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Cutter. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 15.0, year wrecked: 1838	Alderman Islands
63	136	Annie Laurie	Vessel name: Annie Laurie Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Cutter. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 24.21, year wrecked: 1866	Alderman Islands
64	179	Elsie Mary	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Schooner. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 134.0, year wrecked: 1929	Aldermen Islands
65	119	Half Caste	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Cutter. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 16.0, year wrecked: 1883	Tairua, Boat Harbour
66	182	Kaiaia	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Cutter. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 26.87, year wrecked: 1936	Castle Rock 7 miles south of Mercury Bay
67	172	Winnie	Type of vessel: Scow Sailing rig type: Ketch. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 24.12, year wrecked: 1918	Kiritia Bay, Coromandel

71	38	HMS Buffalo	Wreck of the HMS Buffalo which was blown ashore at Whitianga on 28 July 1840. Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Ship. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 589.0	Whitianga
74	133	Buffalo	Wreck of the HMS Buffalo which was blown ashore at Whitianga on 28 July 1840. Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Ship. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 589.0	Whitianga
75	159	Opotiki	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Cutter. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 24.76, year wrecked: 1884	Mercury Bay, South Sunk Rock
78	112	Darling	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Schooner. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 36.0, year wrecked: 1832	Mercury Bay
79	109	Columbia	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Schooner. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 46.0, year wrecked: 1887	Mercury Bay
80	153	Bonita	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Schooner. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 22.0, year wrecked: 1876	North Head, Coromandel Harbour
87	122	Lion	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Barque. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 216.0, year wrecked: 1872	Whangapoua bar
88	127	Shamrock	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Cutter. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 22.85, year wrecked: 1871	Whangapoua bar
89	110	Blonde	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Cutter. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 14.0, year wrecked: 1875	Kennedys Bay, Coromandel peninsula
90	117	Frithjof	Type of vessel: Scow Sailing rig type: Ketch. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 17.26, year wrecked: 1887	Kennedys Bay, Coromandel
91	128	Start	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Cutter. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 27.22, year wrecked: 1893	Kennedys Bay, Coromandel
92	166	Combine	Lighter,. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 58.0, year wrecked: 1945	Kennedys Bay, Coromandel
93	165	Kathleen Maud	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Cutter, year wrecked: 1908	Kennedys Bay, Coromandel
95	161	Maitai	Type of vessel: Single screw steamer Sailing rig type: Fore & aft Schooner. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 275.0, year wrecked: 1889	Mercury Island
100	170	Relax	Fishing vessel year wrecked: 1968	Red Mercury Island, Von Luckners Cove
102	147	Stanley	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Brigantine. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 350.2, year wrecked: 1899	Double Island, west of Red Mercury

105	130	Undine	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Schooner. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 21.0, year wrecked: 1856	Western coast of Great Mercury Island
106	129	Sydney	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Cutter, year wrecked: 1877	Cabbage Bay, Coromandel
112	183	Yvonne	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Ketch, year wrecked: 1937	Waikawau Bay, Coromandel
114	138	Harriet King	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Brigantine. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 155.0, year wrecked: 1872	Port Charles, Coromandel
115	178	Thomas Bryan	Type of vessel: Screw steamer Sailing rig type: Ketch. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 215.8, year wrecked: 1928.	Between Port Charles and Waikawau Bay, Coromandel
116	152	Fiery Star	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Ship. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 1361.0, year wrecked: 1865	15 miles south of Curvier Island
118	120	Isabella Pratt	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Top sail schooner. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 71.13, year wrecked: 1881	Port Charles, Coromandel
119	167	Eileen Bell	year wrecked: 1947	Port Charles, Coromandel
120	168	Nucula	Oiler,. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 4614.0, year wrecked: 1947	11 miles ENE of Curvier Island
121	115	Elizabeth Curle	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Schooner. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 76.0, year wrecked: 1882	Curvier Island
122	125	Onyx	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Barque. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 419.73, year wrecked: 1925	Cuvier Island
143		Ruapuke Wreck	A shipwreck reported as early as 1875, likely buried in sand. Appears periodically.	Ruapuke
159		Brisk	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Cutter. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 15.0, year wrecked: 1866	Coromandel, 4 miles south of Cabbage Bay
160		Nellie	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Ketch. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 41.17, year wrecked: 1894	Hot Water Bay, Coromandel
161		Oregon	Type of vessel: Side wheel paddle steamer Sailing rig type: Ketch. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 27.42, year wrecked: 1889	Mokau River mouth
162		Helen Denny	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Barque. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 728.0, year wrecked: 1948	Cuvier Island
163		Turanga	Type of vessel: Sailing vessel. Sailing rig type: Schooner. Gross tonnage (imperial tons): 28.4, year wrecked: 1921	Mokau River bar

Schedule 6 – Sites of significance to Māori (ASCVs) | Āpiti 6 – Ngā wāhi tāpua a te Māori

Ref	Site/Area	Values
1	Mokau River Estuary	• Site of cultural importance to Tainui and Taranaki iwi. • The Mokau River was a major transport route for Taranaki and Waikato Māori. • The region, especially near the river mouth was densely settled. It provided strategic sites for fortified settlements (pa), fertile volcanic soils for horticultural activity, fish and shellfish gathering sites. Te Une-pota is one of the numerous caves along the coast at the base of the cliff at Mokau. A reddish sediment (kokowhai or red ochre) was scraped from the walls and used for colouring canoes and wooden articles. These caves are also said to be urupa. • Groves of Tainui tree (*Pomaderris apetala*) growing near the heads are said to have sprung from the rollers, skids and flowing of Tainui waka' the canoes which brought the Ngāti Maniapoto and other Tainui tribes to Kawhia and soon after, to Tongaporutu, Mokau and Awakino. • The sandstone rock in the Mokau estuary on which Tainui waka was said to have been anchored (hence the name Tainui anchor) was discreetly moved in 1926 to the cemetery near Awakino. It is this long association with the site, importance of pa, particularly that on Motu-tawa Island situated in a bay in the upper estuary, various battles and the linkages with Tainui waka and important kaimoana gathering for Mōkau marae that makes this area special to Māori. • Whitebait spawning habitat. • Regionally important whitebait and native fishery.
2	Marokopa River Estuary	• Site of cultural importance to Tainui iwi for gathering kaimoana. • The estuary and immediate coastline south to and beyond Kiritihere, has been identified by Tainui iwi as a site of importance, both for its cultural and spiritual values and for the harvest of whitebait and kahawai within the river estuary area and mapper, mullet, paua, crayfish and shark from the coastline.
3	Arataura (Albatross Point) and adjoining coastline	• Site of cultural importance to Tainui iwi, for gathering kaimoana. • The area of traditional use includes the coastline south to Taharoa, which incorporates this site. • The headland and bays were important for gathering kaimoana particularly snapper, mussel, paua, crayfish and kina. • Haul out and breeding site for NZ fur seal. • Nationally significant fossil and geological site. • Arataura Pt (R15 631 415), Ururoa Pt (R15 648 430.
4	Kawhia Harbour	• Site of immense value to Tainui iwi. • Kawhia Harbour is recognised as the hearth and the most important settlement of the Tainui people. Tainui have grown into a federation of large and powerful tribes and are numerically the largest tangata whenua grouping in Aotearoa. Even today, their origins in Aotearoa are recognised as being at Kawhia, at Maketu, at Te Tumu and Tainui and

		Ahurei. Kawhia Harbour and its environs are of immense importance to Tainui iwi. • Canoe resting site - Te Ahurei. • Presence of Maui dolphin. • Historic pohutukawa tree. (R15 697 467). • Te Puia Springs (R15 663 470). • Maketu marae.
5	Aotea Harbour	• Site of cultural importance to Tainui iwi. Aotea Harbour was the landing place of the Aotea waka commanded by Turi. The Aotea waka preceded the Tainui waka by some 50 years. • On the southern shore near the entrance is the well-preserved remains of Puraho Pa, which was probably built about 1700 AD. Local tradition holds that the unusual korowai (a stone bird) was found nearby at the site of an ancient village a little to the west, although other recordings state this stone bird was rediscovered in 1878, on land at Ruapuke, between Aotea and Whāingaroa (Raglan Harbour) (re Tumu o Tainui 1986). The stone bird (Korotangi) is of great significance to Tainui iwi. • Aotea has been identified for the traditional gathering of flounder, pupu crabs, whitebait, mussel, tāmure (snapper), tuna (eel), trevally and mullet. • Maui dolphin area.
6	Kārewa (Gannet Island)	• Kārewa is Māori land with an overlying status of wildlife sanctuary. • It is an ancient Māori burial site, is also a popular fishing and diving spot with the clear waters surrounding this now remote, dormant volcano jutting out of the Tasman Ocean. • Through the co-operation and approval of the last Māori Queen, Te Atai-rangi-kahu, Kārewa was gazetted as a wildlife sanctuary. • The sanctuary was established to protect the colony of gannets and also one of New Zealand's northernmost seal colonies. • Haul out and breeding site for NZ fur seal. • The island is a two hectare rocky outcrop which rises about 150 feet from the ocean.
7	Whāingaroa (Raglan Harbour)	• Site of cultural significance to Tainui iwi. • Whāingaroa was a favoured area of Māori settlement. There are a great number of archaeological sites recorded around the harbour - midden, pits, pa and one site containing rock drawings. The significance of these sites is regarded as being of regional importance. • Maui dolphin area.
8	Waikato River mouth and Estuary	• The importance of the Waikato River to Tainui iwi can be summarised by the following. "In the eyes of the Tainui tribes the Waikato River is a single living entry, a threat to one part is a threat to the whole".... "Five centuries of continuous occupation of its banks have embedded the river deep into the group and individual consciousness". This importance cannot be over emphasised. • Wildlife habitat of high value.
9 / 10	Firth of Thames to Tararu	• Site of cultural significance to Hauraki iwi, including Ngāti Maru. • Te Anaputa, just north of Tararu, is a landing site of the Tainui waka. • Extensive shellfish beds and gathering of shellfish.

11	Manaia Harbour	• Site of significance to Hauraki iwi - Ngāti Pūkenga, Ngāti Whanaunga and Ngāti Maru. • Manaia, 10 km south of Coromandel town, was gifted by Ngāti Maru to Ngāti Pukenga in recognition of assistance rendered by that Bay of Plenty tribe during the 'musket wars'. This is one of the few large Māori-owned areas in Hauraki. • Manaia is the largest Māori community on the peninsula north of Thames. The people are of Ngāti Pūkenga, Ngāti Whanaunga and Ngāti Maru tribes. The marae is Te Kou o Rehua. • Manaia was a rich resource area: 'Ko Manaia, he pataka kai' (Manaia the food store).
12	Inner Coromandel Harbour	• Site of significance to Hauraki iwi - Ngāti Pūkenga, Ngāti Whanaunga and Ngāti Maru.
13	Colville Bay	• Site of significance to Hauraki iwi. • Significant breeding site for NZ dotterel. • Nationally significant archaeological sites.
15	Waikawau Bay and Estuary	• Site of significance to Hauraki iwi. • Adjoining Waikawau Farm Park recreational reserve.
14	Cape Colville to Sandy Bay	• Site of significance to Hauraki iwi. • Archaeological sites of 'Archaic' period.
16	Whangapoua Harbour	• Site of significance to Hauraki iwi. • Extensive shellfish beds. • A number of archaeological sites around harbour margins. • A reserve at Opera Point, east of Whangapoua, contains the remains of the Raukawa pa site.
17	Kūaotunu Peninsula	• Site of cultural and spiritual significance to Hauraki iwi. • Significant roosting and breeding sites for migratory birds and small populations of threatened wildlife, including the NZ dotterel and variable oyster catcher. • Extensive shellfish beds and shellfish gathering.
18	Ohinau Island Group	• Sites of significance to Hauraki iwi. The islands belong to Ngāti Hei - mana whenua of much of the East Coast of the Coromandel Peninsula. • Significant colonies of sea birds. • Regionally significant archaeological sites.
19	Mercury Island Group and Cuvier Island	• Sites of significance to Hauraki iwi and to Ngāti Porou ki Hauraki. • The larger of the Mercury Islands were used for growing kumara which grew well in the fertile soils and frost-free conditions. Titi was harvested on most of the islands. Numerous pa, pits, terraces and midden are found on all but a few of the smaller islands. It is likely that occupation was seasonal except for Great Mercury Island which is one of the only islands which has permanent water. Occupation on Great Mercury Island continued until the 1820's. • Cuvier island (Repanga) has its origins with the Arawa canoe, which according to tradition carried two guardian birds able to forecast and subdue storms. As the canoe neared the end of its journey the birds were released on Repanga with the task of maintaining a vigil overall

		seafarer in the area. Cuvier Island also has numerous pits, terraces and midden from past occupation. • Paikea who came from Hawaiki, lived and cultivated kumara at Ahuahu (Mercury Island), which lies just off the Harataunga coast. • Islands and rock stacks are gazetted reserves. • Significant colonies of burrowing sea birds. • Island managed as refuges for endangered fauna. • Regionally significant archaeological site. • Red Mercury Island basalt.
20	Whitianga Harbour	• Site of significance to Hauraki iwi. • Resident common dolphins.
21	Purangi Estuary and Te Whanganui-a-Hei (Cathedral Cove) Marine Reserve south to Hereheretaura Peninsula	• Site of significance to Hauraki iwi. • Significant kaimoana breeding ground, adjacent to the Te Whanganui-a-Hei Marine Reserve. • Significant site of early European settlement. • Extensive shellfish beds and shellfish gathering. • Site includes Mahurangi Island Recreation Reserve.
22	Alderman Island Group	• Site of significance to Hauraki iwi. • Have been used for traditional harvest of titi and gardening. The islands have been used seasonally in the past by Ngāti Maru, Ngāti Hako and Ngāti Hei for collecting titi (mutton birds) and for gardening. The Trustees are actively involved in the management of islands, including the traditional take of titi in early summer. • Frequented by NZ fur seal. • Significant burrowing seabird colonies. • Threatened lizard and tuatara. • Regionally significant cultural and archaeological sites.
23	Upper Tairua Harbour	• Site of significance to Hauraki iwi. • Archaeological shell middens. • Whitebait spawning habitat.
24	Opoutere Sandspit and Wharekawa Harbour	• Site of significance to Hauraki iwi. • Large breeding population of NZ dotterel. • Resident and frequenting rare and threatened waders and coastal bird species, including variable oyster catcher, banded rail and bittern. • Gathering of shellfish.
25	Upper Whangamata Harbour	• Site of significance to Hauraki iwi. • Originally the area that is now Whangamatā and the surrounding district belonged to the Ngāti Hako hapū of the Hauraki people. It was used extensively for the gathering of kaimoana and the many pa and kainga sites around the harbour are evidence of this. In more recent times moves have been made to build a marae on Papamaire Island in the upper harbour, to service the cultural and spiritual needs of tangata whenua. • Gathering of shellfish.
26	Otahu Estuary	• Site of significance to Hauraki iwi. • Native fisheries values.

27	Whangamata Islands	• Sites of significance to Hauraki iwi. • There are four islands in the group off the Whangamatā coast: o Hauturu (also referred to as Clark Island) o Maukaha o Rawengaiti o Whenuakura (also referred to as Donut Island) • Whenuakura lies one kilometre east from Whangamatā Beach. Whenuakura is a Wildlife Sanctuary. • The Islands are the ancestral home of Nga Marama the first Polynesians to occupy the Whangamatā area. They were here before the Tahitian migration and the Hawaiian migration. Their descendants, who are Uru-Nga-Wera (which means the weapon of fire) and Ngāti Pu, their whanau, are the kaitiaki of the Islands and tangata whenua of Whangamatā.

Schedule 7 – Significant Indigenous Biodiversity Areas | Āpiti 7 – Rerenga rauropi

Significant Biodiversity Area A and B criteria

An area shall be considered a Significant Indigenous Biodiversity Area A or B if it consistent with the criteria and factors for Significant Indigenous Biodiversity Areas A and B (SIBA-A and SIBA-B) sites outlined in Table 1 from Table 11A-1 of the operative Waikato Regional Policy Statement 2016. These criteria have been used to determine the SIBAs listed in Table 2 and will be used to assess proposed future additions to the schedule.

- **Significant Indigenous Biodiversity Areas – A (SIBA-A):** Areas which, due to their physical form, scale or inherent indigenous biodiversity values, are considered to be the most valuable to threatened species, critical habitat and vulnerable ecosystem types. They are also considered to be most vulnerable to any adverse effects of inappropriate use and development.

- **Significant Indigenous Biodiversity Areas – B (SIBA-B):** These are areas that have indigenous biodiversity significance and values which do not warrant an SIBA-A identification as they generally include more resilient ecosystem types, or ecosystem types that are generally more widespread throughout the region.

Table 1 - Significant Biodiversity Area criteria

Criteria	Description
1	It is indigenous vegetation or habitat for indigenous fauna that is currently, or is recommended to be, set aside by statute or covenant or by the Nature Heritage Fund, or Ngā Whenua Rāhui committees, or the Queen Elizabeth the Second National Trust Board of Directors, specifically for the protection of biodiversity, **and meets at least one of criteria 3-11.**
2	In the Coastal Marine Area, it is indigenous **vegetation or habitat** for indigenous fauna that has r**educed in extent or degraded** due to historic or present **anthropogenic activity** to a level where the ecological **sustainability of the ecosystem is threatened.**
3	It is vegetation or habitat that is currently habitat for indigenous species or associations of indigenous species that are: classed as **threatened or at risk, or endemic to the Waikato region, or at the limit of their natural range.**[3]
4	It is indigenous vegetation, habitat or ecosystem type that is under-represented (20% or less of its known or likely original extent remaining) in an Ecological District, or Ecological Region, or nationally.
5	It is indigenous vegetation or habitat that is, and prior to human settlement was, nationally uncommon such as geothermal, chenier plain, or karst ecosystems, hydrothermal vents or cold seeps.[4]
6	It is wetland habitat for indigenous plant communities and/or indigenous fauna communities (excluding exotic rush/pasture communities) that has not been created and subsequently maintained for or in connection with: • waste treatment; • wastewater renovation; • hydroelectric power lakes (excluding Lake Taupō)

[3] Excludes open ocean habitat for threatened pelagic species like fish, marine mammals and seabirds
[4] All terrestrial types and Offshore islands with unnaturally uncommon terrestrial types.

	• water storage for irrigation; or • water supply storage; unless in those instances they meet the criteria in Whaley et al. (1995).
7	It is an area of indigenous vegetation or naturally occurring habitat that is large relative to other examples in the Waikato region of similar habitat types, and which contains all or almost all indigenous species typical of that habitat type. Note this criterion is not intended to select the largest example only in the Waikato region of any habitat type.
8	It is aquatic habitat within intertidal mudflat or estuary, or any other part of the coastal marine area and their margins, that is critical to the self-sustainability of an indigenous species within a catchment of the Waikato region, or within the coastal marine area. In this context "critical" means essential for a specific component of the life cycle and includes: • breeding and spawning grounds, juvenile nursery areas, • important feeding areas and • migratory and dispersal pathways of an indigenous species. This includes areas that maintain connectivity between habitats.
9	It is an area of indigenous vegetation or habitat that is a healthy and representative example of its type because: • its structure, composition, and ecological processes are largely intact; and • if protected from the adverse effects of plant and animal pests and of adjacent land and water use (e.g. stock, discharges, erosion, sediment disturbance), can maintain its ecological sustainability over time.
10	It is an area of indigenous vegetation or habitat that forms part of an ecological sequence, that is either not common in the Waikato region or an ecological district, or is an exceptional, representative example of its type.
11	It is an area of indigenous vegetation or habitat for indigenous species (which habitat is either naturally occurring or has been established as a mitigation measure) that forms, either on its own or in combination with other similar areas, an ecological buffer, linkage or corridor and which is necessary to protect any site identified as significant under criteria 1-10 from external adverse effects.

Significant Indigenous Biodiversity Areas A and B

Areas that have been assessed against the above criteria and factors and have been determined as being Significant Indigenous Biodiversity Areas are identified on the overlay maps and the values for each area are described in Table 2 below.

Table 2 - Significant Biodiversity Areas identified in the Waikato region coastal marine area

Area	Name	SIB criteria	SIBA A values	SIBA B values
3	Mōkau River Mouth	3, 8,11	Nesting and roosting sites for threatened and at risk shorebirds are present. Species known to be present include Caspian tern (Threatened – Nationally Vulnerable) and variable oystercatcher (At Risk – Recovering). Inanga spawning (At Risk – Declining)	The river mouth and adjacent sandflats provide foraging habitat for At Risk and Threatened shorebirds and a migration pathway for several Threatened and At Risk native fish including; shortjaw kokopu (Threatened - Nationally Vulnerable), lamprey (Threatened – Nationally Vulnerable), longfin eel (At Risk – Declining), torrentfish (At Risk – Declining), giant kokopu (At Risk – Declining), koaro (At Risk – Declining), inanga (At Risk – Declining) and bluegill bully (At Risk – Declining).
4	Awakino River Mouth	3, 6, 8	Nesting and roosting sites for threatened and at risk shorebirds are present: variable oystercatcher (At Risk – Recovering).	The river mouth and adjacent saltmarsh and sandflats provide foraging habitat for At Risk and Threatened shorebirds and a migration pathway for several Threatened and At Risk native fish including; shortjaw kokopu (Threatened - Nationally Vulnerable), longfin eel (At Risk – Declining), torrentfish (At Risk – Declining), giant kokopu (At Risk – Declining), koaro (At Risk – Declining) and inanga (At Risk – Declining).
13	Marokopa River Mouth	3, 8	Nesting and roosting sites for threatened and at risk shorebirds are present: variable oystercatcher (At Risk – Recovering).	The river mouth itself provides a migration pathway and habitat for several native fish species i.e. longfin eel Anguilla dieffenbachia (At Risk – Declining) and inanga Galaxias maculatus (At Risk – Declining).
16	Taharoa Beach	3	The dunelands and adjacent intertidal sandflats host breeding populations of variable oystercatcher Haematopus unicolor (At Risk – Recovering), northern New Zealand dotterel Charadrius obscurus aquilonius (At Risk – Recovering).	
17	Kawhia Harbour	3, 4, 6, 8	Breeding populations of variable oystercatcher (At Risk – Recovering), northern New Zealand dotterel (At Risk – Recovering) are present along the sandy shoreline although exact locations may vary annually (not mapped).	The harbour includes a mosaic of coastal wetland habitat types including seagrass Zostera muelleri (At Risk Declining) beds, mangroves, saltmarsh and intertidal sand/mudflats. The harbour mouth and river are migration pathways and possible spawning habitat for several native fish species found in the wider catchment ie. shortjaw kokopu Galaxias postvectis (Threatened - Nationally Vulnerable), longfin eel Anguilla dieffenbachia (At Risk – Declining), koaro Galaxias brevipinnis (At Risk – Declining), inanga Galaxias maculatus (At Risk – Declining) and bluegill bully Gobiopmorphus hubbsi (At Risk – Declining). The harbour also provides important wintering (non-breeding) populations of black stilt (Threatened – Nationally Critical), banded

Area	Name	SIB criteria	SIBA A values	SIBA B values
				dotterel (Threatened – Nationally Vulnerable), South Island pied oystercatcher (At Risk – Declining) and bar-tailed godwit (At Risk – Declining).
18	Aotea Harbour	3, 4, 6, 8, 10	Breeding populations of variable oystercatcher (At Risk – Recovering), northern New Zealand dotterel (At Risk – Recovering) are present although exact locations may change annually (not mapped). Southwest of Pakoka Landing features intact estuarine-freshwater wetland-freshwater swamp forest-coastal forest sequences.	A mosaic of coastal wetland habitat types including seagrass Zostera muelleri (At Risk Declining) beds, mangroves, saltmarsh and intertidal sand/mudflats. The harbour mouth and river are migration pathways and possible spawning habitat for several native fish species found in the wider catchment ie. shortjaw kokopu Galaxias postvectis (Threatened - Nationally Vulnerable), longfin eel Anguilla dieffenbachia (At Risk – Declining), koaro Galaxias brevipinnis (At Risk – Declining), inanga Galaxias maculatus (At Risk – Declining) and bluegill bully Gobiopmorphus hubbsi (At Risk – Declining). The harbour also provides important wintering (non-breeding) populations of banded dotterel (Threatened – Nationally Vulnerable), South Island pied oystercatcher (At Risk – Declining) and bar-tailed godwit (At Risk – Declining).
19	Karewa/ Gannet Island	1, 3, 9	Designated a Wildlife Sanctuary under the Wildlife Act, in part due to the presence of New Zealand's largest Australasian gannet colony. All biota on the island is protected. Northernmost breeding site for New Zealand fur seal. A rare example of a largely unmodified offshore island off the region's west coast.	
21	Manu Bay	5a	Subtidal rocky reef supports a population of the maacroalga Pachymenia lusoria (At Risk – Naturally Uncommon).	
22	Whaingaroa/ Raglan Harbour	3, 4, 6, 8, 10	Breeding populations of variable oystercatcher Haematopus unicolor (At Risk – Recovering), northern New Zealand dotterel Charadrius obscurus aquilonius (At Risk – Recovering) Exact nesting sites may vary annually (not mapped). The extreme southwest extent of Raglan Harbour and coastline running to the west then south forms an ecological sequence encompassing marine and terrestrial ecosystems culminating in the summit of Mt Karioi – from the mountain to the sea.	The harbour includes a mosaic of coastal wetland habitat types including seagrass Zostera muelleri (At Risk Declining) beds, mangroves, saltmarsh and intertidal sand/mudflats that provide foraging and breeding habitat for native fauna. Important wintering (non-breeding) populations of South Island pied oystercatcher Haematopus finschi (At Risk – Declining) and bar-tailed godwit Limosa lapponica baueri (At Risk – Declining) are all present within the harbour. The harbour mouth and river are migration pathways and possible spawing habitat for several native fish species ie shortjaw kokopu Galaxias postvectis (Threatened - Nationally Vulnerable), lamprey Geotria australis

Area	Name	SIB criteria	SIBA A values	SIBA B values
				(Threatened – Nationally Vulnerable), longfin eel Anguilla dieffenbachia (At Risk – Declining), giant kokopu Galaxias argenteus (At Risk – Declining), koaro Galaxias brevipinnis (At Risk – Declining), inanga Galaxias maculatus (At Risk – Declining) and bluegill bully Gobiopmorphus hubbsi (At Risk – Declining).
24	Waimai Stream to Waikorea Stream	3, 8	The river mouth and adjacent sandflats provide nesting, foraging and roosting habitat for threatened and at risk shorebirds. Species known to be present include; variable oystercatcher (At Risk – Recovering), northern New Zealand dotterel (At Risk – Recovering).	
26	Kaawa Stream Mouth	3	The river mouth and adjacent sandflats provide nesting, foraging and roosting habitat for threatened and at risk shorebirds. Species known to be present include breeding population of northern New Zealand dotterel (At Risk – Recovering).	
29	Waikato River Mouth	3, 6, 4, 8	Nesting, foraging and roosting habitat for threatened and at risk shorebirds including breeding populations of variable oystercatcher (At Risk – Recovering), northern New Zealand dotterel (At Risk – Recovering) and pied shag (At Risk – Recovering). Critical spawning sites for inanga Galaxias maculatus were historically present.	The river mouth includes a mosaic of coastal wetland habitat types including seagrass Zostera muelleri (At Risk – Declining) beds, saltmarsh and sand/mudflats transitioning into dunelands and freshwater wetlands. Migration pathway for several native fish species found in the wider catchment including shortjaw kokopu Galaxias postvectis (Threatened - Nationally Vulnerable), lamprey Geotria australis (Threatened – Nationally Vulnerable), longfin eel Anguilla dieffenbachia (At Risk – Declining), torrentfish Cheimarrichthys fosteri (At Risk – Declining), giant kokopu Galaxias argenteus (At Risk – Declining), koaro Galaxias brevipinnis (At Risk – Declining), inanga Galaxias maculatus (At Risk – Declining) and bluegill bully Gobiopmorphus hubbsi (At Risk – Declining).
34	Kaiaua	2, 4, 8	Green-lipped mussel habitat located northeast of Kaiaua in subtidal waters close to the centre of the Firth of Thames.	
36	Miranda and surrounding area	1, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 11	Recognised as an internationally important wetland under the Ramsar Convention. There are breeding populations of black-billed gull Larus bulleri (Threatened – Nationally Critical), Caspian tern Hydropogne caspia (Threatened – Nationally Vulnerable), banded rail Gallirallus philippensis assimilis (At Risk – Declining), variable oystercatcher Haematopus unicolor (At Risk – Recovering), northern New Zealand dotterel Charadrius obscurus aquilonius (At Risk – Recovering) and pied	The Firth comprises of a mosaic of coastal wetland habitat types including shellbanks, sand/mudflats, seagrass beds and rocky reef. plus important wintering (non-breeding) populations of black stilt Himantopus novaezelandiae (Threatened – Nationally Critical), wrybill Anarhynchus frontalis (Threatened – Nationally Vulnerable), banded dotterel Charadrius bicinctus bicinctus (Threatened – Nationally Vulnerable), lesser knot Calidris canutus rogersi (Threatened – Nationally Vulnerable), South Island pied oystercatcher Haematopus finschi (At Risk –

Area	Name	SIB criteria	SIBA A values	SIBA B values
			shag Phalacrocorax varius varius (At Risk – Recovering), Within this site Te Puaeharuri Stream supports longfin eel Anguilla dieffenbachia (At Risk – Declining), torrentfish Cheimarrichthys fosteri (At Risk – Declining) and inanga Galaxias maculatus (At Risk – Declining), Waitakaruru River supports longfin eel Anguilla dieffenbachia (At Risk – Declining), torrentfish Cheimarrichthys fosteri (At Risk – Declining) and inanga Galaxias maculatus (At Risk – Declining), Piako River supports longfin eel Anguilla dieffenbachia (At Risk – Declining), torrentfish Cheimarrichthys fosteri (At Risk – Declining), giant kokopu Galaxias argenteus (At Risk – Declining) and inanga Galaxias maculatus (At Risk – Declining), Waihou River supports shortjaw kokopu Galaxias postvectis (Threatened - Nationally Vulnerable), longfin eel Anguilla dieffenbachia (At Risk – Declining), torrentfish Cheimarrichthys fosteri (At Risk – Declining), koaro Galaxias brevipinnis (At Risk – Declining), inanga Galaxias maculatus (At Risk – Declining) and bluegill bully Gobiopmorphus hubbsi (At Risk – Declining), Kauaeranga River supports longfin eel Anguilla dieffenbachia (At Risk – Declining), torrentfish Cheimarrichthys fosteri (At Risk – Declining), koaro Galaxias brevipinnis (At Risk – Declining) and inanga Galaxias maculatus (At Risk – Declining) and Hape Stream supports shortjaw kokopu Galaxias postvectis (Threatened - Nationally Vulnerable), longfin eel Anguilla dieffenbachia (At Risk – Declining), torrentfish Cheimarrichthys fosteri (At Risk – Declining), koaro Galaxias brevipinnis (At Risk – Declining) and inanga Galaxias maculatus (At Risk – Declining).	Declining) and bar-tailed godwit Limosa lapponica baueri (At Risk – Declining). Particularly extensive area of mangrove habitat, extending from Miranda Stream in the west to Kauaeranga River in the east, providing roost sites for seabirds and, where mature, coexisting sea meadow communities. The extensive mangrove habitat around the southern coast of the Firth of Thames may play an important role as a sediment trap, effectively protecting other areas of the Firth from predominantly terrestrially-derived sediment build-up.
37	Te Puru to Matariki Bay	3, 6, 8	This includes breeding populations of variable oystercatcher Haematopus unicolor (At Risk – Recovering), northern New Zealand dotterel Charadrius obscurus aquilonius (At Risk – Recovering) and pied shag Phalacrocorax varius varius (At Risk – Recovering). Exact roosting and nesting locations will vary annually (not mapped). Green-lipped mussel habitat near Wilson Bay.	The coastline between Te Puru and Matariki Bay includes intertidal rocky reef, sand/mudflats that support a wide variety of native fauna. Within this site Waiomu Stream supports longfin eel Anguilla dieffenbachia (At Risk – Declining), torrentfish Cheimarrichthys fosteri (At Risk – Declining), koaro Galaxias brevipinnis (At Risk – Declining) and inanga Galaxias maculatus (At Risk – Declining), Tapu River supports longfin eel Anguilla dieffenbachia (At Risk – Declining) and torrentfish

Area	Name	SIB criteria	SIBA A values	SIBA B values
				Cheimarrichthys fosteri (At Risk – Declining), Te Mata River supports longfin eel Anguilla dieffenbachia (At Risk – Declining) and koaro Galaxias brevipinnis (At Risk – Declining), Waikawau River supports longfin eel Anguilla dieffenbachia (At Risk – Declining), torrentfish Cheimarrichthys fosteri (At Risk – Declining), koaro Galaxias brevipinnis (At Risk – Declining) and inanga Galaxias maculatus (At Risk – Declining) and Paraunahi Stream supports longfin eel Anguilla dieffenbachia (At Risk – Declining). Estuarine habitat at Kirita Bay.
38	Manaia Harbour	3, 4, 6, 8,	Breeding populations of variable oystercatcher (At Risk – Recovering) and northern New Zealand dotterel (At Risk – Recovering) Estuarine habitat with areas of high density pipi towards the outer edge of the harbour and areas of high density crustacean burrows, predominantly on the north side of the outer harbour.lapponica baueri (At Risk – Declining).	The harbour includes a mosaic of coastal wetland habitat types including seagrass Zostera muelleri (At Risk Declining) beds, mangroves, saltmarsh and intertidal sand/mudflats. The harbour mouth provides a migration pathway for longfin eel Anguilla dieffenbachia (At Risk – Declining) and torrentfish Cheimarrichthys fosteri (At Risk – Declining). Wintering site of South Island pied oystercatcher Haematopus finschi (At Risk – Declining) and regularly-occurring bar-tailed godwit Limosa
39	Te Kouma Harbour	3, 4, 6, 8	Areas of high density crustacean burrows towards the head of the bay (not mapped).	The harbour includes a mosaic of coastal wetland habitat types including seagrass Zostera muelleri (At Risk Declining) beds, mangroves, saltmarsh and intertidal sand/mudflats. Areas of biogenic oyster reef are present within the smaller bays
40	Coromandel Harbour	2, 3, 4, 6, 8	Breeding populations of variable oystercatcher (At Risk – Recovering) and northern New Zealand dotterel (At Risk – Recovering). The intertidal areas have high density crustacean burrows, cockles, pipi and oysters (not mapped).	The harbour includes a mosaic of coastal wetland habitat types including seagrass Zostera muelleri (At Risk Declining) beds, mangroves, saltmarsh and intertidal sand/mudflats. Wintering site of banded dotterel (Threatened – Nationally Vulnerable) and South Island pied oystercatcher (At Risk – Declining) and regularly-occurring bar-tailed godwit baueri (At Risk – Declining). Creeks and Rivers provide migration pathways and possible spawning habitat for longfin eel Anguilla dieffenbachia (At Risk – Declining), torrentfish Cheimarrichthys fosteri (At Risk – Declining), koaro Galaxias brevipinnis (At Risk – Declining), inanga Galaxias maculatus (At Risk – Declining), bluegill bully Gobiopmorphus hubbsi (At Risk – Declining) and giant bully

Area	Name	SIB criteria	SIBA A values	SIBA B values
				Gobiopmorphus gobioides (At Risk – Declining).
41	Cow Island	3	Breeding population of New Zealand white-faced storm petrel Pelagodroma marina maoriana (At Risk - Relict).	
42	Motokurure/ Shag Rock	3	Breeding population of New Zealand white-faced storm petrel Pelagodroma marina maoriana (At Risk - Relict).	
43	Koputauaki Bay to Tukituki Bay	3	The coastline between the bays support breeding populations of variable oystercatcher (At Risk – Recovering) and northern New Zealand dotterel (At Risk – Recovering).	
44	Colville Bay	3, 6, 8	Breeding populations of variable oystercatcher (At Risk – Recovering) and northern New Zealand dotterel (At Risk – Recovering) Several areas of high density pipi occur towards the outer reaches of the bay.	The harbour includes a mosaic of coastal wetland habitat types including seagrass Zostera muelleri (At Risk Declining) beds, mangroves, saltmarsh and intertidal sand/mudflats. regularly-occurring South Island pied oystercatcher Haematopus finschi (At Risk – Declining), bar-tailed godwit Limosa lapponica baueri (At Risk – Declining) and banded rail Gallirallus philippensis assimilis (At Risk – Declining). Creeks and rivers associated with the harbour provide a migration pathway and possible spawning habitat for shortjaw kokopu Galaxias postvectis (Threatened - Nationally Vulnerable), longfin eel Anguilla dieffenbachia (At Risk – Declining), torrentfish Cheimarrichthys fosteri (At Risk – Declining), inanga Galaxias maculatus (At Risk – Declining) and bluegill bully Gobiopmorphus hubbsi (At Risk – Declining).
45	Waiaro Bay	3	Breeding populations of variable oystercatcher (At Risk – Recovering) and northern New Zealand dotterel Charadrius obscurus aquilonius (At Risk – Recovering).	The bay includes a mosaic of coastal wetland habitats
47	Fantail Bay to Waikawau Bay	2, 3, 4, 6, 8, 10	The coastline between Fantail Bay and Waikawau Bay around the top of the Coromandel Peninsula comprises an ecological sequence that captures steep sea-cliffs, gravel pocket beaches and shallow tidal embayments and streams. A range of threatened and at risk fauna species including breeding populations of sea and shorebirds, naturally uncommon seaweeds. Within Waikawau Estuary along the Waikawau River unmodified sequence from estuarine to freshwater communities, with freshwater swamp characterised by manuka Leptospermum scoparium, flax Phormium	Offshore, muddy sands off Fantail Bay become more shelly and sandy due to strong currents in Colville Channel. Mosaic of estuarine, rocky reefs and shorelines, sandy beaches and dunes, Creeks and river mouths provide migration pathway for native fish.

Area	Name	SIB criteria	SIBA A values	SIBA B values
			tenax, cabbage tree Cordyline australis and toetoe Cortaderia fulvida.	
50	Repanga/ Cuvier Island	2, 3, 4, 8, 10	Breeding populations of northern blue penguin Eudyptula minor iredalei (At Risk – Declining), red-billed gull Larus novaehollandiae scopulinus (At Risk – Declining), white-fronted tern Sterna striata striata (At Risk – Declining), Pycroft's petrel Pterodroma pycrofti (At Risk – Recovering), pied shag Phalacrocorax varius varius (At Risk – Recovering), fluttering shearwater Puffinus gavia (At Risk - Relict) and northern (common) diving petrel Pelecanoides urinatrix urinatrix (At Risk – Relict). Terrestrial to marine ecological sequence, from predator-free, seabird-rich island through the intertidal to subtidal, with notable rocky reef systems.	Intertidal and rocky reef habitats are present.
51	Mercury Islands	2, 3, 3, 6, 8, 10	Breeding populations of flesh-footed shearwater Puffinus carneipes (Nationally Vulnerable), sooty shearwater Puffinus griseus (At Risk – Declining), northern blue penguin Eudyptula minor iredalei (At Risk – Declining), red-billed gull Larus novaehollandiae scopulinus (At Risk – Declining), white-fronted tern Sterna striata striata (At Risk – Declining), North Island little shearwater Puffinus assimilis haurakiensis (At Risk – Recovering), Pycroft's petrel Pterodroma pycrofti (At Risk – Recovering), pied shag Phalacrocorax varius varius (At Risk – Recovering), fluttering shearwater Puffinus gavia (At Risk - Relict) and northern (common) diving petrel Pelecanoides urinatrix urinatrix (At Risk – Relict). Subtidal seagrass Zostera muelleri (At Risk – Declining) bed located at Hurihuri Bay, which decreased in extent substantially between 1974 and 2004. Seagrass habitat. Rhodolith bed habitat to the west of Great Mercury Island. Rocky reef habitat. Horse mussel habitat. Estuarine habitat at Huruhi Harbour Terrestrial to marine ecological sequence, from predator-free, seabird-rich islands through the intertidal to subtidal, with notable rocky reef systems.	
52	Kennedy Bay and estuary	2, 3, 6, 8, 10	Area of high density cockles, and areas of high density burrows and a small area of oysters in the estuary.	The Bay includes a mosaic of coastal wetland habitat types including , mangroves, saltmarsh and intertidal sand/mudflats. Intertidal sandflats.

Area	Name	SIB criteria	SIBA A values	SIBA B values
			Breeding populations of variable oystercatcher Haematopus unicolor (At Risk – Recovering) and northern New Zealand dotterel Charadrius obscurus aquilonius (At Risk – Recovering).	Creeks and stream mouths provide migration pathway for lamprey Geotria australis (Threatened – Nationally Vulnerable), longfin eel Anguilla dieffenbachia (At Risk – Declining), torrentfish Cheimarrichthys fosteri (At Risk – Declining), giant kokopu Galaxias argenteus (At Risk – Declining), koaro Galaxias brevipinnis (At Risk – Declining), inanga Galaxias maculatus (At Risk – Declining) and giant bully Gobiopmorphus gobioides (At Risk – Declining).
53	Whangapoua Harbour including ocean beaches from New Chums Beach to Kuaotunu Beach	1, 2, 3, 6, 7, 8, 10, 11	Seagrass Zostera muelleri (At Risk – Declining) beds, including subtidal beds notably in the Mapauriki arm. Breeding and post-breeding flocking populations of variable oystercatcher Haematopus unicolor (At Risk – Recovering) and northern New Zealand dotterel Charadrius obscurus aquilonius (At Risk – Recovering)	The harbour includes a mosaic of coastal wetland habitat types including mangroves, saltmarsh and intertidal sand/mudflats. Wintering site of banded dotterel Charadrius bicinctus bicinctus (Threatened – Nationally Vulnerable) and South Island pied oystercatcher Haematopus finschi (At Risk – Declining) and regularly-occurring bar-tailed godwit Limosa lapponica baueri (At Risk – Declining). The Whangapoua harbour provides a migration pathway for longfin eel Anguilla dieffenbachia (At Risk – Declining), torrentfish Cheimarrichthys fosteri (At Risk – Declining), inanga Galaxias maculatus (At Risk – Declining) and giant bully Gobiopmorphus gobioides (At Risk – Declining) and Kuaotunu River supports longfin eel Anguilla dieffenbachia (At Risk – Declining), torrentfish Cheimarrichthys fosteri (At Risk – Declining) and inanga Galaxias maculatus (At Risk – Declining).
54	Kuaotunu to Opito Bay including Otama Beach and Estuary	2,3, 6, 8, 9, 11	This coastline includes a mosaic of coastal wetland habitat types as follows: Seagrass habitat at Otama Estuary. Sponge garden habitat at Opito Bay Bryozoan habitat at Opito Bay. These support breeding populations of variable oystercatcher Haematopus unicolor (At Risk – Recovering) and northern New Zealand dotterel Charadrius obscurus aquilonius (At Risk – Recovering). Relatively intact coastal vegetation sequence at Otama Estuary: rush/sedge and saltmarsh ribbonwood Plagianthus divaricatus communities grade into freshwater swamp with manuka Leptospermum scoparium, pohuehue Muehlenbeckia complexa and blue-green sedge Baumea juncea, which in turn grades into regenerating coastal forest and open duneland.	

Area	Name	SIB criteria	SIBA A values	SIBA B values
58	Black Rocks, Flat Island, Ohinauiti Island and Ohinau Island group and surrounds	3, 8	Breeding populations of flesh-footed shearwater Puffinus carneipes (Threatened - Nationally Vulnerable), northern blue penguin Eudyptula minor iredalei (At Risk - Declining) and North Island little shearwater Puffinus assimilis haurakiensis (At Risk - Recovering). Rocky reef habitat.	
59	Needle Rock and surrounds	3, 8	Breeding populations of fluttering shearwater Puffinus gavia (At Risk - Relict) and northern (common) diving petrel Pelecanoides urinatrix urinatrix (At Risk - Relict).	
60	Matapaua Bay to Whauwhau Beach	3	Breeding populations of variable oystercatcher Haematopus unicolor (At Risk – Recovering) and northern New Zealand dotterel Charadrius obscurus aquilonius (At Risk – Recovering).	
60	Matapaua Bay to Whauwhau Beach	3	Breeding populations of variable oystercatcher Haematopus unicolor (At Risk – Recovering) and northern New Zealand dotterel Charadrius obscurus aquilonius (At Risk – Recovering).	
60	Matapaua Bay to Whauwhau Beach	3, 8	Breeding populations of variable oystercatcher Haematopus unicolor (At Risk – Recovering) and northern New Zealand dotterel Charadrius obscurus aquilonius (At Risk – Recovering).	
61	Wharekaho Beach	3	Breeding populations of variable oystercatcher Haematopus unicolor (At Risk – Recovering) and northern New Zealand dotterel Charadrius obscurus aquilonius (At Risk – Recovering).	
61	Wharekaho Beach	3	Breeding populations of variable oystercatcher Haematopus unicolor (At Risk – Recovering) and northern New Zealand dotterel Charadrius obscurus aquilonius (At Risk – Recovering).	
62	Whitianga Harbour and Buffalo Beach	1, 2, 3, 3, 6, 6, 8, 10, 11	Intertidal sand/mudflats with areas of high density cockles, crabs and crustacean burrows from the middle to upper reaches of the estuary Occurrence of shortjaw kokopu Galaxias postvectis (Threatened - Nationally Vulnerable), lamprey Geotria australis (Threatened – Nationally Vulnerable), longfin eel Anguilla dieffenbachia (At Risk – Declining), torrentfish Cheimarrichthys fosteri (At Risk – Declining), koaro Galaxias brevipinnis (At Risk – Declining), inanga Galaxias maculatus (At Risk – Declining) and bluegill bully Gobiopmorphus hubbsi (At Risk – Declining). Breeding populations of variable oystercatcher Haematopus unicolor (At Risk	The harbour includes a mosaic of coastal wetland habitat types including seagrass Zostera muelleri (At Risk Declining) beds, mangroves, saltmarsh

Area	Name	SIB criteria	SIBA A values	SIBA B values
			– Recovering), pied shag, and northern New Zealand dotterel Charadrius obscurus aquilonius (At Risk – Recovering) and resident populations of Australasian bittern Botaurus poiciloptilus (Threatened – Nationally Critical) and banded rail Gallirallus philippensis assimilis (At Risk – Declining). Nationally Important Wildlife habitat, Resident and frequenting rare and threatened wading coastal and freshwater bird species, resident common dolphins, adjoining forest reserves.	
63	Cooks Beach and Purangi Estuary	2, 3, 6, 8, 11	High density pipi, cockles and crustacean burrows, and a relatively small area of oysters towards the upper reaches of the estuary. Occurrence of longfin eel Anguilla dieffenbachia (At Risk – Declining), giant kokopu Galaxias argenteus (At Risk – Declining), inanga Galaxias maculatus (At Risk – Declining) and giant bully Gobiopmorphus gobioides (At Risk – Declining). Breeding population of northern New Zealand dotterel Charadrius obscurus aquilonius (At Risk – Recovering) and resident populations of australasian bittern, banded rail, fernbird.	The estuary includes a mosaic of coastal wetland habitat types including seagrass Zostera muelleri (At Risk Declining) beds, mangroves, saltmarsh and intertidal sand/mudflats
64	Whanganui A Hei and Offshore Islands	1, 3, 8	Marine Reserve extends from the coast at approximately Cook Bluff and offshore to Motukorure/Centre Island then south-eastwards to the northern end of Hahei Beach and offshore to the northern end of Mahurangi/Goat Island. Breeding population of northern New Zealand dotterel Charadrius obscurus aquilonius (At Risk – Recovering). Breeding population of sooty shearwater Puffinus griseus (At Risk – Declining). (Poikeke Island)	
65	Hahei Beach, Wigmore pass and Mahurangi Island	2, 3, 4, 8	Rocky intertidal and subtidal reef and biogenic habitat for reef fish/indigenous species. Occurrence of longfin eel Anguilla dieffenbachia (At Risk – Declining), inanga Galaxias maculatus (At Risk – Declining) and giant bully Gobiopmorphus gobioides (At Risk – Declining).	Includes a mosaic of rocky reef, intertidal sandflats, beaches and dunes. Resident populations of At Risk birds (Gannet, VOC, NNZD, fluttering shearwater, red billed and black billed gull, caspian tern, little penguin) and breeding populations of
66	Motokurure/Centre Island	3	Breeding population of fluttering shearwater Puffinus gavia (At Risk – Relict).	

Area	Name	SIB criteria	SIBA A values	SIBA B values
68	Hot Water Beach	3	The beach, dunelands and intertidal sandflats provide nesting, roosting and foraging habitat for variable oystercatcher Haematopus unicolor (At Risk – Recovering) and northern New Zealand dotterel Charadrius obscurus aquilonius (At Risk – Recovering).	
69	Sailor's Grave – Te Karo Bay	3, 5	The beach, dunelands and intertidal sandflats provide nesting, roosting and foraging habitat for variable oystercatcher Haematopus unicolor (At Risk – Recovering) and northern New Zealand dotterel Charadrius obscurus aquilonius (At Risk – Recovering). Macroalgae beds with Carpophyllum angustifolium, Lessonia sp. A and Pleurostichidium falkenbergii (all At Risk – Naturally Uncommon) are present.	
70	Tairua Harbour, including Tairua Ocean Beach and Pauanui Beach	2, 3, 6, 8, 11	High density of wedge shell and crustacean burrows are noted towards the estuary mouth. breeding populations of variable oystercatcher Haematopus unicolor (At Risk – Recovering) and northern New Zealand dotterel Charadrius obscurus aquilonius (At Risk – Recovering) are present.	The harbour includes a mosaic of coastal wetland habitat types including seagrass Zostera muelleri (At Risk Declining) beds, mangroves, saltmarsh and intertidal sand/mudflats. Resident populations of reef heron Egretta sacra sacra (Threatened – Nationally Endangered) and banded rail Gallirallus philippensis assimilis (At Risk – Declining). The harbour provides a wintering site of banded dotterel Charadrius bicinctus bicinctus (Threatened – Nationally Vulnerable) and South Island pied oystercatcher Haematopus finschi (At Risk – Declining) with regular occurrence of Caspian tern Hydroprogne caspia (Threatened – Nationally Vulnerable). The river mouth provides a migration pathway and potential spawning habitat for several native fish: longfin eel Anguilla dieffenbachia (At Risk – Declining), torrentfish Cheimarrichthys fosteri (At Risk – Declining), giant kokopu Galaxias argenteus (At Risk – Declining), koaro Galaxias brevipinnis (At Risk – Declining), inanga Galaxias maculatus (At Risk – Declining) and giant bully Gobiopmorphus gobioides (At Risk – Declining).
71	Aldermen Islands	2, 3, 8	Breeding populations of sooty shearwater Puffinus griseus (At Risk – Declining), northern blue penguin Eudyptula minor iredalei (At Risk – Declining), red-billed gull Larus novaehollandiae scopulinus (At Risk – Declining), North Island little shearwater Puffinus assimilis haurakiensis (At Risk – Recovering), variable oystercatcher Haematopus unicolor (At Risk – Recovering), pied shag Phalacrocorax varius varius (At Risk – Recovering), fluttering shearwater	

Area	Name	SIB criteria	SIBA A values	SIBA B values
			Puffinus gavia (At Risk – Relict), New Zealand white-faced storm petrel Pelagodroma marina maoriana (At Risk – Relict) and northern (common) diving petrel Pelecanoides urinatrix urinatrix (At Risk – Relict). Rhodolith bed habitat.	
72	Whakahau/Slipper Island, Pauanui/Penguin Island and Rabbit Island	2, 3, 8	Breeding populations of pied shag Phalacrocorax varius varius (At Risk – Recovering), fluttering shearwater Puffinus gavia (At Risk – Relict) and northern New Zealand dotterel Charadrius obscurus aquilonius (At Risk – Recovering). Subtidal seagrass Zostera muelleri (At Risk – Declining) bed located at South Bay. Seagrass habitat. Rhodolith bed habitat. Intertidal, subtidal and deep rocky reef.	
75	Ohui/North end of Opoutere Beach south to Wharekawa Harbour	2, 3, 6, 8, 11	Intermittent breeding populations of reef heron Egretta sacra sacra (Threatened – Nationally Endangered), red-billed gull Larus novaehollandiae scopulinus (At Risk – Declining) and white-fronted tern Sterna striata striata (At Risk – Declining) occur at Hikunui Rock in the harbour mouth, breeding and post-breeding flocking populations of variable oystercatcher Haematopus unicolor (At Risk – Recovering) and northern New Zealand dotterel Charadrius obscurus aquilonius (At Risk – Recovering) and and bar-tailed godwit Limosa lapponica baueri (At Risk – Declining). Wharekawa Harbour – estuarine habitat with areas of high density pipi, cockles and crustacean burrows towards the harbour entrance, and a relatively small area of oysters (not mapped).	The harbour includes a mosaic of coastal wetland habitat types including seagrass Zostera muelleri (At Risk Declining) beds, mangroves, saltmarsh and intertidal sand/mudflats. Resident populations of Australasian bittern Botaurus poiciloptilus (Threatened – Nationally Critical) and banded rail Gallirallus philippensis assimilis (At Risk – Declining), and regularly-occurring banded dotterel Charadrius bicinctus bicinctus (Threatened – Nationally Vulnerable) are present within the coastal wetlands. The harbour also provides habitat and migration pathway for several native fish species i.e. lamprey Geotria australis (Threatened – Nationally Vulnerable), longfin eel Anguilla dieffenbachia (At Risk – Declining), torrentfish Cheimarrichthys fosteri (At Risk – Declining), inanga Galaxias maculatus (At Risk – Declining) and giant bully Gobiopmorphus gobioides (At Risk – Declining)
76	Onemana Beach to southern Tokakahakaha peninsula	3	Breeding populations of variable oystercatcher Haematopus unicolor (At Risk – Recovering) and northern New Zealand dotterel Charadrius obscurus aquilonius (At Risk – Recovering).	
77	Whangamata Harbour, including Whangamata Beach south to Otahu River	2, 3, 6, 8, 10, 11	Breeding populations of variable oystercatcher Haematopus unicolor (At Risk – Recovering) and northern New Zealand dotterel Charadrius obscurus aquilonius (At Risk – Recovering) and regularly-occurring bar-tailed godwit Limosa lapponica baueri (At Risk – Declining) occur within dunelands, intertidal sand/mudflats and shellbanks.	The harbour includes a mosaic of coastal wetland habitat types including seagrass Zostera muelleri (At Risk Declining) beds, mangroves, saltmarsh and intertidal sand/mudflats. Resident populations of Australasian bittern Botaurus poiciloptilus (Threatened – Nationally Critical) and banded rail Gallirallus philippensis assimilis (At Risk –

Area	Name	SIB criteria	SIBA A values	SIBA B values
			Within the Whangamata Harbour – relatively small patches of high density cockles and crustacean burrows are present. Within the Otahu River – Areas of low density invertebrate fauna present with elatively small areas of high density cockles, pipi and crustacean burrows Within the Otahu Estuary, an important estuarine-freshwater-coastal forest sequence displaying intactness, sequence continuity and diversity, with high habitat value for wetland birds.	Declining) are found in coastal wetland habitats. The harbour also provides habitat and migration pathway for several native fish species i.e. shortjaw kokopu Galaxias postvectis (Threatened - Nationally Vulnerable), lamprey Geotria australis (Threatened – Nationally Vulnerable), longfin eel Anguilla dieffenbachia (At Risk – Declining), torrentfish Cheimarrichthys fosteri (At Risk – Declining), koaro Galaxias brevipinnis (At Risk – Declining), inanga Galaxias maculatus (At Risk – Declining) and giant bully Gobiopmorphus gobioides (At Risk – Declining).
78	Hauturu/Clark Island group	1, 3, 8	Breeding population northern blue penguin Eudyptula minor iredalei (At Risk – Declining).	
79	Whiritoa Beach to Waimana Bay	3	Clark Island Group ASCV includes habitat for rare and threatened fauna	
79	Whiritoa Beach to Waimana Bay	3, 6, 11	Clark Island Group ASCV includes habitat for rare and threatened fauna	
80	Mataora Bay	3	Breeding populations of variable oystercatcher Haematopus unicolor (At Risk – Recovering) and northern New Zealand dotterel Charadrius obscurus aquilonius (At Risk – Recovering).	
80	Mataora Bay	3	Breeding populations of variable oystercatcher Haematopus unicolor (At Risk – Recovering) and northern New Zealand dotterel Charadrius obscurus aquilonius (At Risk – Recovering).	
81	Homunga Bay	3		Foraging habitat for At Risk birds
82	Little King and Big King Rock	8	Rocky intertidal and subtidal reef and biogenic habitat for reef fish/indigenous species	
83	Shoe Island/ Motuhoa	8	Rocky intertidal and subtidal reef and biogenic habitat for reef fish/indigenous species	
84	Te Pupuha Point	3, 8	Coralline algae and biogenic reef that provides habitat for indigenous species. Records of At Risk seabirds, fur seal.	
85	Lonely Bay	3	Resident populations of VOC (pairs), NNZD (pairs), gannets, black billed and red billed gull, white fronted tern, pied shag.	
85	Lonely Bay	3	Resident populations of VOC (pairs), NNZD (pairs), gannets, black billed and red billed gull, white fronted tern, pied shag.	
86	Maramaratotara Bay and Flaxmill Bay	3	Resident populations of Pacific Reef Heron, VOC, NNZD (pairs), caspian tern, black billed and red billed gull.	

Area	Name	SIB criteria	SIBA A values	SIBA B values
86	Maramaratotara Bay and Flaxmill Bay	3	Resident populations of Pacific Reef Heron, VOC, NNZD (pairs), caspian tern, black billed and red billed gull.	
87	East Coast - Benthic Habitat	2, 8	Intertidal and subtidal rocky reef.	

Schedule 7A – Principles of Biodiversity Offsets | Ngā whanonga e whakataurite ana i te rerenga rauropi

Principles of Biodiversity Offsets

Biodiversity offsets are measurable conservation outcomes resulting from actions designed to compensate for significant residual adverse biodiversity impacts arising from project development after appropriate prevention and mitigation measures have been taken. The goal of biodiversity offsets is to achieve no net loss and preferably a net gain of biodiversity on the ground with respect to species composition, habitat structure, ecosystem function and people's use and cultural values associated with biodiversity. These principles establish a framework for designing and implementing biodiversity offsets and verifying their success.

Biodiversity offsets should be designed to comply with all relevant national and international law, and planned and implemented in accordance with the Convention on Biological Diversity and its ecosystem approach, as articulated in National Biodiversity Strategies and Action Plans.

1. **No net loss:** A biodiversity offset should be designed and implemented to achieve in situ, measurable conservation outcomes that can reasonably be expected to result in no net loss and preferably a net gain of biodiversity.
2. **Additional conservation outcomes:** A biodiversity offset should achieve conservation outcomes above and beyond results that would have occurred if the offset had not taken place. Offset design and implementation should avoid displacing activities harmful to biodiversity to other locations.
3. **Adherence to the mitigation hierarchy:** A biodiversity offset is a commitment to compensate for significant residual adverse impacts on biodiversity identified after appropriate avoidance, minimisation and on-site rehabilitation measures have been taken according to the mitigation hierarchy.
4. **Limits to what can be offset:** There are situations where residual impacts cannot be fully compensated for by a biodiversity offset because of the irreplaceability or vulnerability of the biodiversity affected.
5. **Landscape context:** A biodiversity offset should be designed and implemented in a landscape context to achieve the expected measurable conservation outcomes taking into account available information on the full range of biological, social and cultural values of biodiversity and supporting an ecosystem approach.
6. **Stakeholder participation:** In areas affected by the project and by the biodiversity offset, the effective participation of stakeholders should be ensured in decision-making about biodiversity offsets, including their evaluation, selection, design, implementation and monitoring.
7. **Equity:** A biodiversity offset should be designed and implemented in an equitable manner, which means the sharing among stakeholders of the rights and responsibilities, risks and rewards associated with a project and offset in a fair and balanced way, respecting legal and customary arrangements. Special consideration should be given to respecting both internationally and nationally recognised rights of indigenous peoples and local communities.
8. **Long-term outcomes:** The design and implementation of a biodiversity offset should be based on an adaptive management approach, incorporating monitoring and evaluation, with the objective

of securing outcomes that last at least as long as the project's impacts and preferably in perpetuity.

9. **Transparency:** The design and implementation of a biodiversity offset, and communication of its results to the public, should be undertaken in a transparent and timely manner.
10. **Science and traditional knowledge:** The design and implementation of a biodiversity offset should be a documented process informed by sound science, including an appropriate consideration of traditional knowledge.

Advisory note:

The document Guidance on Good Practice Biodiversity Offsetting in New Zealand 2014 provides a New Zealand context to biodiversity offsetting, including guidance on how the Principles on Biodiversity Offsets relate to RMA requirements. In particular, it provides an explanation for terminology used in the BBOP that has a different meaning under the RMA.

Schedule 8 – Surf breaks | Āpiti 8 – Ngā ngaru moana

Schedule 8A – Nationally significant surf breaks

Surf break Name	TYPE
Nationally Significant	
Whangamata Bar	Bar
Raglan - Indicators	Point
Raglan - Whale Bay	Point
Raglan - Manu Bay	Point

Schedule 8B – Regionally significant surf breaks

Surf break Name	TYPE
Regionally Significant	
Albatross Point	Point, Beach
Aotea Reef	Bombora
Awakino	Beach, River Bars
Hahei	Point, Beach
Homunga	Beach, Bombora
Hotwater Beach	Point, Beach, Bombora
Kiritehere	Point, Boulder/Pebble/Sand Beach
Kuaotunu	Point/Reef, Beach
Marokopa	Beach, River Bars
Matarangi	Beach, Bar
Mokau	Beach, River Bars
Mussel Rocks	Beach
New Chums	Point, Beach
Ngarunui Beach	Beach
Onemana	Beach
Opito	Beach
Opoutere	Beach, River Bar
Black Jacks	Point Break
Otama Beach	Beach
Pauanui	Bar, Beach, Point
Raglan Bar	Bar
The Reef	Point
Sunset Beach	Beach
Rings	Beach
Ruapuke	Beach
Sailours Grave	Beach, Reef
Tairua	Beach, Point
Te Akau	Beach

Waikawau Bay	Beach, Reef/Point
Whangamata Beach	Beach
Whangapoua	Point, Beach
Whiritoa	Reef, Beach
Whitianga	Beach, Bar, Point

Schedule 9 – Water Quality Standards | Āpiti 9 – Ngā paerewa kounga wai

Schedule 9A – Water quality limits

The standards set out in the table below are not to be breached alone or cumulatively with other inputs.

This schedule provides receiving water quality standards for coastal waters. The standards apply after reasonable mixing of any contaminant or water with the receiving water and disregarding the effect of any natural perturbations that may affect the water body. The effect of more than one discharge will be assessed cumulatively.

Attribute	Compliance	Compliance narrative	Qualitative description	Water Quality Unit		
				Firth of Thames	Estuaries	Open Coast
Dissolved oxygen concentration (mg/l)	Annual median	Minimum value should be at or above minimum standard		>6.9	>6.9	no discernible change
	Minimum			4.6	4.6	4.6
Dissolved oxygen saturation (%)	Maximum	Annual / seasonal median should be between or at maximum and minimum standards		110	110	110
	minimum			80	80	90
pH	pH units are dimensionless	Annual minimum and annual maximum		7.0 to 8.5	7.0 to 8.5	8.0 to 8.4
Temperature (°C)	(°C)			no change by more than 3°C	no change by more than 3°C	no change by more than 3°C
Euphotic Depth	Waters shallower than euphotic depth			Euphotic depth should not be reduced by more than 20%	Euphotic depth should not be reduced by more than 20%	Euphotic depth should not be reduced by more than 20%
Euphotic Depth	Waters deeper than euphotic depth			Euphotic depth should not be reduced by more than 10%	Euphotic depth should not be reduced by more than 10%	Euphotic depth should not be reduced by more than 10%
Visual Water Clarity	Secchi depth(m)		There shall be no conspicuous	Less than 20%	Less than 20%	Less than 20%

Attribute	Compliance	Compliance narrative	Qualitative description	Water Quality Unit		
				Firth of Thames	Estuaries	Open Coast
			change in the colour or visual clarity of waters	reduction and exceed 1.6m based on 200mm black disc	reduction and exceed 1.6m based on 200mm black disc	reduction and exceed 1.6m based on 200mm black disc
Enterrococci concentration /100ml	Concentration must not exceed		The waters shall not be rendered unsuitable for bathing by the presence of contaminants	280	280	40
E. Coli /faecal coliform concentration /100ml	median value of seasonal data is at or below the standard		Aquatic organisms shall not be rendered unsuitable for human consumption by the presence of contaminants.	14	14	14
	90th percentile value of seasonal data is at or below the standard			43	43	43
	Maximum value not to be exceeded		The waters shall not be rendered unsuitable for bathing by the presence of contaminants	550	550	
Nuisance Biological Growths	Presence/ absence		There shall be no Undesirable biological growths as a result of any discharge of a contaminant into the water			
Oil, grease, scum, foam, floatable material	Presence/ absence		There shall be no production of conspicuous oil or grease films, scums or foams, or floatable or suspended materials as a result of any discharge			
Aquatic ecosystems	Presence/ absence		There shall be no significant adverse effects on aquatic life			

Attribute	Compliance	Compliance narrative	Qualitative description	Water Quality Unit		
				Firth of Thames	Estuaries	Open Coast
Chlorophyll-a – mg/l	Annual median			<0.004	<0.004	No discernible change

Schedule 9B – Trigger value limits

This schedule provides receiving water quality standards for coastal waters.

The trigger values apply after reasonable mixing of any contaminant or water with the receiving water and disregarding the effect of any natural perturbations that may affect the water body. The effect of more than one discharge will be assessed cumulatively.

Advisory note:

1. *If values are close to or over the trigger value then additional monitoring may be required as a condition of resources consent or triggered by a review of the condition of that resource consent.*

Attribute	**Compliance**	**Water Quality Unit**		
		Firth of Thames	**Estuaries**	**Open Coast**
Ammoniacal Nitrogen (g/m^3)	Annual/seasonal median should be at or below standard.	0.015	0.015	0.015
Nitrate-Nitrite Nitrogen (g/m^3)	Annual/seasonal median should be at or below standard	0.015	0.015	0.005
Total Nitrogen (g/m^3)	Annual/seasonal median should be at or below standard	0.3	0.3	0.12
Dissolved reactive phosphorus (g/m^3)	Annual/seasonal median should be at or below standard	0.005	0.005	0.01
Total phosphorus (g/m^3)	Annual/seasonal median should be at or below standard	0.03	0.03	0.025
Toxicants	Values in water should not exceed recommended standards as per ANZG (2018) for relevant parameter and protection level	Default Guideline values in ANZG (2018)	Default Guideline values in ANZG (2018)	Default Guideline values in ANZG (2018)

Schedule 10 – Financial contribution | Āpiti 10 – Ngā pūtea tautoko

[To be developed]

Maps | Ngā mahere